



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART NATIONAL STRATES TANKARY CHART

.

1 D i



40-9135 922

UTC FILE COPY

The Integrated Library System User Manuals Circulation Subsystems and General Functions Circulation Subsystems Circulation Subsystem Circulation Computer Subsystem Circulation Subsystem Circulation Subsystem Circulation Subsystem Circulation Computer Subsystems This document is a hardcopy listing of two online user manuals for the Integrated Library System (Library of Medicine. National Library of Medicine. The two Section Competition Computer Two Section II. The Circulation Subsystem Circulation Computer Subsystem Section II. The Circulation Subsystem Circulation Computer Subsystems Circulation Subsystem Circulation Subsystem Circulation Computer Subsystems Circulation Systems Library Automation Circulation Systems Circulation Subsystem Circulation Systems Circulation Control Circulation Systems Circulation Systems Circulation Control Circulation Control Circulation Systems Circulation Systems Circulation Systems Circulation Systems Circulation Control Circulation Systems Circulation Control Circulation Systems Circulation Control Cir	File and Subtrite		1-		
The Integrated Library System Usily 21, 1920 Usily 21, 1920 Circulation Subsystems and General Functions The Integrated Library System Section 1 in the section section in the section in	· · · · · · · · ·	<u> </u>	S. Report Co.		
User Manuals Circulation Subsystems and General Functions Informal Organization Number of Addition Section 2015 States and General Functions It for manufacture in the section is a section in the information of the information of the information informatio	The Integrated Library System		July	21, 1980	
	User Manuals Circulation Subsystems and General Eurotion		4		- ·
Anderson Organization Name and Address Box # 12 Box # 12 Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications, National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health Department of Health and Human Services Library Name This document is also available in machine readable form within the HELP Subsystem of the Integrated Library System, Version 1.0, available through VTIS, PB 80-202582 Americation System (Library System, Version 1.0, available through VTIS, PB 80-202582 Americation Soft the National Library of Medicine. The two sections camprising this document is a hardcopy listing of two online user manuals for the Integrated Library System (Library System, Version 1.0, available through VTIS, PB 80-202582 Americation Soft the National Library of Medicine. The two sections camprising this document are is a hardcopy listing of two online user manuals for the Integrated Library System (Library Control, Section I., The Circulation Subsystem and its section I., Section I., Section I., Section I., Circulation (Inventory) Control, Serials Check-in, and online Catalog Access. The MBF is fully MARC compatible and the Bibliographic Control. Subsystems in process or planed include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Demonstrate Americation Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval Library Automation Unclassified - Unlimited Information Storage and Retrieval Unclassified - Unlimited	Checuration Subsystems and General Function		8. Performung	Organization Rept. No.	
Section I. The Circulation Subsystem includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Material Subsystem includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement in Subsystem includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules for reaction and maintenance of the Statement includes modules offer the catelog access. The MBF is fully MARC compatible and the Statement includes modules offer the catelog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Determine dealable cataloging Systems Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval a count for the Cateloging Systems a count for the Case of the Statement information Storage and Retrieval b modules acadable cataloging Systems a count for the Case of the Statement information Storage and Retrieval a count for the Statement information Storage and Retrieval b modules acadable cataloging Systems a count for the Statement information Storage and Retrieval b modules acadable cataloging Systems a count for the statement information Storage and Retrieval b modules acadable cataloging Systems a count for the statement b modules acadable cataloging Systems b modules acadable cataloging Systems b modu			l 		
Box # 12 It. Comments a constant dense. Approved Difference in and dense. It. Comments a constant dense. Approved Difference in Additional Center for Biomedical Communications. It. Type of Medicine. National Institutes of Health Department of Health and Human Services It. Type of Medicine. Additional Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health It. Additional Center for Biomedical Communications. It. Type of Medicine. Additional Library for Medicine. It. Type of Medicine. Additional Library Mase It. Stream dense & Mense Communications. Additional Library System, Version 1.0, "available through VTIS, PB 80-202582" Additional Library System (ILS) developed at the Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications of the National Library of Medicine. The two sections comprising this document are: Section I. The Circulation Subsystem : @ Section I. The Circulation Subsystem includes collars for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tage processing: Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Accusistions, Catalog, Accusistions, Cataloging Systems Define Circulation Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Ibraries - Information Systems Information Storage and Retrieval Libraries - Information Istee Manuel Resent </td <td>Purlaming Organization Name and Address</td> <td></td> <td>10. Present/T</td> <td>ssk/Work Unit Na.</td> <td></td>	Purlaming Organization Name and Address		10. Present/T	ssk/Work Unit Na.	
	Box # 12		11. Contractif	C) or Grant(G) No.	
			3		
Lister Will National Center for Biomedical Communications, National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health Department of Health and Human Services			6		
Actional Library or Medicine, National Institutes of Health Department of Health and Human Services Department of Health and Human Services This document is also available in machine readable form within the HELP Subsystem of the Integrated Library System, Version 1.0, <u>available through VTIS, P8 80-202558</u> Asserd Library System (LS) developed at the Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications of the National Library of Medicine. The two sections comprising this document are: Section II. The Circulation Subsystem a Section IIGeneral Functions, The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system, ILS, Version 1.0 includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tape processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Metwork Access. DEC 1 3 1983 Automated Circulation Control Unclassified - Unlimited Methoda Library Class the Stasent Unclassified Methoda Classified Methoda Library Automation	Sponsong Orephization Name and Address Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communic	ations,	13. Type of R	legant & Period Gavarad	
International control of the line o	National Library of Medicine, National Institutes o Department of Health and Human Services	or Health			
Internative Mater This document is also available in machine readable form within the HELP Subsystem of the Integrated Library System, Version 1.0, available through VIIS, PB 80-202582 Integrated Library System (ILS) developed at the Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications of the National Library of Medicine. The two sections comprising this document are: Section I. The Circulation Subsystem - a Section IL-"General Functions, The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system. ILS, Version 1.0 includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tape processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Metwork Access. Determined Mathine Readable Cataloging Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Users Manual Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval Contained Mathine Mathine Information Storage and Retrieval Mathine Readable Cataloging Systems Users Manual Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval Mathine Readable Cataloging Systems Unclassified Mathine Readable Cataloging Systems Unclassified Mathine Readable Cunlimited Information Storage and Retrieval			14		
This document is also available in machine readable form within the HELP Subsystem of the Integrated Library System, Version 1.0, <u>available through VTIS, PB 80-202588</u> Amment Lumer AD answell This document is a hardcopy listing of two online user manuals for the Integrated Library System (ILS) developed at the Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications of the National Library of Medicine. The two sections comprising this document are: Section I. The Circulation Subsystem - a	Supplementary Notes		÷		
Amment 10mm 100 means This document is a hardcopy listing of two online user manuals for the Integrated Library System (ILS) developed at the Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications of the National Library of Medicine. The two sections comprising this document are: Section I. The Circulation Subsystem - a Section IISeeneral Functions, The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system. ILS, Version 1.0 includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tape processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Online Circulation Systems Information Systems Online Circulation Systems Library Automation Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Unclassified - Unlimited Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Unclassified - Unlimited • Menutation Mechanic Margene Mathine Readable Cataloging Systems Machine Readable Cataloging	This document is also available in machine read of the Integrated Library System, Version 1.0, <u>avai</u>	iable form wi ilable throug	thin the <u>h NTIS, P</u>	HELP Subsystem 8 80-202558	
This document is a hardcopy listing of two online user manuals for the Integrated Library System (ILS) developed at the Lister Hill National Center for Biomedical Communications of the National Library of Medicine. The two sections comprising this document are: Section I. The Circulation Subsystem - A Section IIGeneral Functions, The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system. ILS, Version I.O. includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic File (MBF), Circulation (Inventory) Control, Serials Check-in, and online Catalog Access. The MBF is fully MARC compatible and the Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tape processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Decomment America: A Domineters Libraries - Information Systems Online Circulation Systems Unclassified - Unlimited Ametadating Massified - Unlimited Ametadating Massified - Unlimited Math-Catalog	Abstract (Limit: 200 words)				
Section I. The Circulation Subsystem - 2 Section IIGeneral Functions, The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system. ILS, Version I.O includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic File (MSF), Circulation (Inventory) Control, Serials Check-in, and online Catalog Access. The MSF is fully MARC compatible and the Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tabe processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Libraries - Information Systems Online Circulation Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation E COMAN Function Unclassified - Unlimited Is Seminy Class (The Face) Unclassified AMSI-CBLIGS Automated Circulation Control Unclassified AMSI-CBLIG Maschine Readable Control Unclassified AMSI-CBLIG AMSI-	This document is a hardcopy listing of two onli Library System (ILS) developed at the Lister Hi Communications of the National Library of Medic this document are:	ine user manu: ill National : ine. The two	als for t Center fo o section	he Integrated r Biomedical s comprising	
The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system. ILS, Version 1.0 includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic File (MBF), Circulation (Inventory) Control, Serials Check-in, and online Catalog Access. The MBF is fully MAC compatible and the Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MAC tape processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Decomment Amongene a Oversider Libraries - Information Systems Online Circulation Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation Library Automation Cotan Fines/Gene Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation Library Automation Machine Strangene Unclassified - Unlimited AMBI-CBLB AMBI-CBLB AMBI-CBLB	Section I. The Circulation Subsystem	∎j <i>a</i> t			
The ILS is an ongoing effort of the Lister Hill Center directed toward the development of a totally integrated, minicomputer-based, library automation system. ILS, Version I.O. includes modules for creation and maintenance of the Master Bibliographic File (MBF), Circulation (Inventory) Control, Serials Check-in, and online Catalog Access. The MBF is fully MARC compatible and the Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC MARC tape processing. Subsystems in process or planned include Patron Interface to the online catalog, Acquisitions, Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access. Decomment Amongene a Control, and Network Access. Decomment Amongene a Control, and Network Access. Decomment Amongene a Control Systems Libraries - Information Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation Library Automation Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation Library Automation Library Statement Unclassified - Unlimited Master Field - Unlimited AMBI-28189 AMBI-28189 Decenter Campace Commerce					
Decument Analysis & Descriptors Libraries - Information Systems Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation Codam Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation Codam Readable Cataloging Systems Users Manual Information Storage and Retrieval Codam Readable - Unlimited Is. Security Class (This Report) 22. No. of Pages Unclassified - Unlimited AMSI-258.180 Decompose	system. ILS, Version 1.0 includes modules for Master Bibliographic File (MBF), Circulation (I Check-in, and online Catalog Access. The MBF i Bibliographic Control Subsystem includes OCLC M in process or planned include Patron Interface Cataloging, Serials Control, and Network Access	creation and inventory) Com is fully MARC MARC tape pro- to the onlin- 5.	maintena ntrol, Se compatib cessing. e catalog	nce of the rials le and the Subsystems , Acquisitions,	•
Decument Ansigues & Decenterers Libraries - Information Systems DEC 1 3 1983 DEC 1 3 198		N .	•		an a train 🚗
Libraries - Information Systems DEC 1 3 1983 DEC 1 3 198	Decument Anelysis a. Descriptors				
Libraries - Information Systems Online Circulation Systems Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Library Automation COSATI Finle/Group Aresidentity Statement Unclassified - Unlimited ANSI-C39.101 ANSI-C39.101 Unclassified Unclassifi	tibuscion Information Suctors	I.		••	TEN
Identifiers/Open-Ended Terms Online Circulation Systems Automated Circulation Control Users Manual Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval Unclassified - Unlimited Information Informati Information Information Information Information	LIDEATIES - INTORNALION SYSTEMS	(
Identifiers/Open-Ended Terms Online Circulation Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Users Manual Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval Unclassified - Unlimited Is. Security Class (This Report) Unclassified Unclassified Arena String Regen Unclassified Regen Unclassified Ortional room 372 (4-77) Germenty Mile-333 Dependent of Commorce					1 2 1022
Online Circulation Systems Automated Circulation Control Machine Readable Cataloging Systems Users Manual Library Automation Information Storage and Retrieval • COSATI Field/Group Information Storage and Retrieval Aveilability Statement Unclassified Unclassified - Unlimited Unclassified AMSI-239.180 Operional Fold	b. Identifiers/Open-Ended Terms			750	η α 180 0 -
Anti-239.161 Vice Automation Vice Automation Vice Automation Storage and Retrieval Vice Automation Vice Automation Storage and Retrieval Vice Automation Vice Automation Storage and Retrieval Vice Automation	Online Circulation Systems Automated Ci	irculation Co	ntrol	1. 1	
c. COSATI Field/Group Areidability Statement Unclassified - Unlimited ANSI-239.187 Unclassified ANSI-239.187 Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified Unclassified	Library Automation Information	Storage and	Retrieval		-
c. COBATI Field/Group Arenisability Statement Unclassified - Unlimited ANSI-239.187 ANSI-239.187 COBATI Field/Class (This Report) 21. No. of Pages Unclassified OPTIONAL FORM 272 -4-77 (Farmeric NTIS-33) Dependment of Commerce		ttorage and			
Arsusadiny Statement Unclassified - Unlimited ANSI-23.167 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.177 ANSI-23.1777 ANSI-23.1777 ANSI-23.1777 ANSI-23.17777 ANSI-23.17777 ANSI-23.17777777 ANSI-23.1777777777777777777777777777777777777	s. COSATI field/Group			×	
Unclassified - Unlimited Unclassified 22. Prov 20. Security Class (This Page) 22. Prov Unclassified OptionAL FORM 272 (72) (Fermenty ATS-33) Dependent of Commonce	Archability Statement	S. Security Class (Thr	s Report)	21. No. of Pages	
ANSI-239.18) ANSI-239.18) ANSI-239.18) Control AL FORM 272 (72) (Farmering MTS-33) Dependent of the control AL FORM 273 (72) (Farmering MTS-33) Dependent of the control AL FORM 273 (72) (Farmering MTS-33) Dependent of the control AL FORM 273 (72)	Unclassified - Unlimited	Unclassifie	ed	; 	
ANSI-239.18 OFTCHAL FORM 272 -4-77 (Farmarity h115-33) Degetment of Commorce	2	B. Security Class (TP)	s Pagel	22. Free	
r/Farmeriny h115—23) Dagenmente di Cammonce			2 4	OPTIONAL FORM 272	-771
	ANSI-239.18)			(Fermerly NTIS-33) Department of Common	t •
	ANSI-239.19)				
	ANSI-239.19)				
	ANE-238.187				·
	ANEI-239.19)				
Ĥ	ANEL-235.10)				•

NOTICE

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED FROM THE BEST COPY FURNISHED US BY THE SPONSORING AGENCY. ALTHOUGH IT IS RECOGNIZED THAT CERTAIN PORTIONS ARE ILLEGIBLE, IT IS BEING RELEASED IN THE INTEREST OF MAKING AVAILABLE AS MUCH INFORMATION AS POSSIBLE.

INTEGRATED LIBRARY SYSTEM USER MANUAL

THE CIRCULATION SYSTEM



July 21, 1980

Integrated Library System

User Manuel

THE CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM

JUL 21, 1980

·

··· //

N. S. Star

.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	CS 1878000CTTON 1	
•		
	· GIRCUMATION SUBJECTION ADDITIONS	
	- CIRCULATION SUBSISTIN OFFICIAL	
	6 CIRCULATION SUBSISIEN OVERVIEW	
	J CERCULATION SUBJETED SPECTRM FEATURES	
) Co General Conceptation (1997)	
	4 THE PARMAR COMMANDATION AND A STREAM AND A ST	
	3 TRE FURNARD GOMMERG	
	4 THE BACKUP COMBANG	
	6 TRE IRAVEL COMMERCIAL CONTRACTOR AND CONTRACTOR CONTRA TOR CONTRA TOR CONTR	
	/ Working with Item and Patron Lists	
	y CS Introduction To Special function Keys	
	10 THE FUNCTION REL	
	11 THE - FUNCTION REF	
	12 THE F FUNCTION REF	
	13 THE B FUNCTION KEY	
	14 THE THE FUNCTION REY 8	
	15 THE F6 FUNCTION KEY 8	
	16 THE F7 FUNCTION KEY 8	
	17 THE / FUNCTION KEY 9	
	4 SYSTEM GLOSSARY	
2	CHECK IX	
	1 INTRODUCTION	
	1 CI Overview	
	2 CI Step By Step	
	3 Identify Item	
	Access by Item Identification Number	
	2 Access by Author 12	
	3 Access by Call Number 12	
	4 Access by ISSN oz ISBN 13	
	5 Access by LC Card Number 13	
	6 Access by Title Key 14	
	7 Access by Author Title Key 14	
	8 Access by Series 15	
	9 Message (Item Just Entered) 15	
	10 CI Complete Transaction 15	
	4 CI Special Features 15	
3	CHECK OUT	
	1 INTRODUCTION	
	1 CO OVERVIEW	
	2 CO Step By Step Procedures 17	
	1 Identifying the Patron 18	
	2 Identify Item 19	
	3 Access by Item Identification Number	
	4 Access by Author	
	5 Access by Call Number 20	
	6 Access by ISSN or ISBN 21	
	7 Access by LC Card Number 21	

;;;];]

- a -

Ξ

	8 Access by 5	Fitle Key	
	9 Access by	Author Title Key	
	10 Access by	Series	
	11 Message ()	Item Just Entered)	
	12 Complete	Transaction	
	3 CO Special Fe	eatures	
4	INTER-LIBRARY LO	AN	
	1 INTRODUCTION		
	1 IL Overview.		
	2 IL Step By S	tep	
	3 IL Special F	atures	
5	MESSAGE		
	1 INTROPUCTION.		
	1 ME OVETVIEW.		
	2 ME Step By S	tep	
	3 ME Special F	atures	
6	MAILOUT		r
-	1 INTRODUCTION.		r
	1 NO OVERVIEW.		
	2 MO Step By S	tep	
	3 MO Special F	eatures	
7	PULL		r i
	1 INTRODUCTION.		r
	1 PU Overview.	30	ł
	2 PU Stap By S	30	
	3 PU Special Fo	atures	
8	RECALL	32	
•	1 INTRODUCTION	32	
	1 PC Overview.	32	
	2 RC Stan By S	ten	
	1 Tdentify T	tem	2
	2 Locass by	Item Identification Number	ż
	3 Locess by	Author 33	į
	4 iccess by	Call Number 34	í.
	5 locess by	TSSN or TSBN.	Ĺ
	6 Locess by	LC Card Number	
	7 locess by	Title Key. 36	
	A locast by	Author Title Key.	
	9 Locess by	Series	
	10 Message (Itam Just Enternall 37	
	3 BC Special F	37	
q	RENTH	38	
	1 INTRODUCTION	38	Ĺ
	1 PP Guarviau	······································	Ĺ
	2 RE Sten Bu S	ten	
	- nu uter by u 1 Trientifuin	a the Patron.	, I
	2 Identify T	tem	
	1 iccess hy	Ttem Identification Number	
	4 locass hu	Author Li	
	5 Incase hu	Call Number	
	6 Locass by	ISSN OF ISRN	
	·		

-

. /√

	7	Access	by	LC CI	rd	Numal	ez.											42
		Lecase	hu	Ti+1					•••									4.3
	, i	1							•••	••••	• • •	•••		•••	•••		••••	
		ACCUSS	ØY	AUCHO	- 1	7.074		y	• • •	••••	•••	• • •	• • • •	•••	• • •	• • • •	• • • • •	43
	10	ACCOSI	I DY	Ser:		•••	• • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •	•••	• • •	• • • •	•••	•••	• • • •	• • • • •	44
	11	Messag	7 e (Item	Jus	t Es	ster	ed)				• • •		• • •	• • •			44
	12	RE CON	ple	ite Ti	ans	acts	.on.	• • •			• • •							44
	3 R.E	Specia	11 7	'eatu														45
10	RECEI	PT CHEC	K-1	ж														46
	TNTI	00000770	- w		••••	••••		•••			•••	•••					••••	4.6
•					• • • •		• • • •	• • •				• • •	• • • •	••••	• • •			54
	1 83				• • • •	• • •	•••	• • •	• • •	• • • •	•••	•••	• • • •	•••	•••	• • • •	• • • • •	
	Z RI	Step	sy s	tep.	• • •	• • •	••••	•••	• • •	• • • •	•••	• • •	• • •	••••	•••	• • • •	• • • • •	46
	1	Identi:	EY I	ter.		•••	• • • •	• • •	•••	• • • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •		47
	2	fccess	рÀ	Item	Ide	nti:	Eica	tio	n X	umbe	Σ.,							47
	3	Access	by	Auth	۶ ۲										• • •			48
	4	Accass	by	Call	Xue	ber												48
	5	LCCASS	hv	TSSN	07	TSRI	ŧ											49
	š	lecase	hu	70 0		Mu a l		•••	•••	••••		•••	••••		•••			L 0
		Access						•••	• • •	••••	•••	•••	••••	••••	•••	• • • •		
		ACCESS	DY	1141	E K.	¥	• • • •	• • •	•••	• • • •	• • •	•••	• • •	••••	•••	• • • •	• • • • •	30
	8	YCCSER	by	Auth	or T	1410	h Ke	¥	•••	• • • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •	•••	• • • •	• • • • •	50
	9	Yccess	by	Seri	t ∎	• • •		• • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •	• • •	• • •		• • •			51
	10	Messa	7e (Item	Jus	t Ei	itez	ed)				• • •			• • •			51
	11	RI Cri	ate	Reco	hipt						• • •							51
	3 83	C Specia	1 7	aatu:														51
									•••			•••			•••	••••	••••	52
· ' •	7141		 		••••	•••	• • • •	•••	•••	••••	••••	• • •	••••		•••	••••		6.2
•		KUDUCII.	JR	••••	••••	• • •	• • • •	• • •	•••	• • • •	• • • •	•••	•••		• • •	• • • •	• • • • • •	36
	1 8	UVEIV:	Lew.		• • • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •		• • •	• • • •				54
	2 2																	
	• •	, areb	ay s	Step.	• • • •	• • •		• • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •	•••		• • •	• • • •	• • • • •	52
	1	RV Add	ay S a J	Step. Reser	 V e	•••	· · · ·	•••	•••	•••	• • • •	•••	· · ·	••••	•••	 	• • • • • •	52 53
	1	RV Add RV Edi	ay : a } ting	Step. Reser g an 3	ve Ltem		Pat	ron	 2u	 	· • • • •	•••• •••	••••	 	•••	••••	· · · · · · ·	52 53 53
	1 2 3	RV Add RV Edi RV Edi	ay 2 a 1 ting atir	Step. Reser g an 3 Ng an	ve Item	01 10 10	Pat Fat	ron	2u n 2			•••• •••• •••	• • • • • •	· · · · ·	•••	••••		52 53 53 54
	1 2 3 4	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi	ay 3 a H ting atir fvir	Step Reser y an 2 Ng an Ng th	ve Etem Ite 2 Ps	01 B 0	Pat c Pa	ron	2u n 2		· · · · ·	••••	•••		•••			52 53 53 54 54
	1 2 3 4 5	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi:	ay : a I ting tir fyir by	Step Reser (an) ig an ig the Ttem	Ve Etem Ite E Pe	OI B OI troi	Pat Pat E Pa	ron	2u n 2			••••	• • • •		••••			52 53 53 54 55 56
	1 2 3 4 5	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access	a I ting ting tir fyir by	step Reser y an ig an ig the Item	Item Item Ite Ite	or m o: tro: nti	Pat E Pa A	ron	2u n 2 n X			· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·		52 53 53 54 55 56
	1 2 3 4 5 6	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access	a Fing ting ting tir fyir by by	step leser an ig an ig the Item Auth	Utem Item Ite Ite Ite	OI BOI troi nti	Pat E Pa L fica	ron	2u n 2 n X			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·		52 53 53 54 55 56 56
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access	ay 2 a 1 ting ting tir fyir by by by	step Reser I an Ig an Ig the Item Auth Call	Ve Etem Ite Ite Ite Num	or m or tro: nti 	Pat E Pa Lica	tio	2u n 2 n X			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			52 53 55 55 56 56 57
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access Access	ay 2 a H ting tir fyir by by by by	step leser an ig an ig th Item Auth Call ISSN	tem Item Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite	or m or trointi ISB	Pat E Pa fica	tio	2u n 2 n X			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			52 53 54 55 56 57 57
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	RV Add RV Edi RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access Access Access Access	ay I a I ting tyir by by by by by	step leser an ig an ig th Item Auth Call ISSN LC C	Ve Item Ite Ite DIte D	or mor nti ber ISB Num	Pat E Pa Éica	tio	2u n 2 			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			52 53 55 55 55 55 57 55 57 58
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access Access Access Access	ay I ang ting ting by by by by by by by	tep an an ag an ag th Item Auth Call ISSN LC C Tit	ve Item Ite Ite Ite Va Num or Num or Num	or m o tro nti ISB Num	Pat E Pa Lica	ron itro	2u n 2 			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					52 53 55 55 55 55 57 58 58
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 71	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi. Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	a a ling ting tity by by by by by by by by by by by by by	itep leser an ig an ig th Item Auth Call ISSN LC C y Tit y Aut	ve Etem Ite Ite Ite SI Num or Num or Num Num or Num	ey.	Pat E Pa fica 	tio	9u n 9 									52 53 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 71 12	RV Edi RV Edi Identi. Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	a a ng ting tityy byy byy byy byy byy by by by by by by	Step leser an ig an ig th ig th Auth Call ISSN IC C t t y Autr y Ser	ve Item Ite Ite Va Va Va Va Va Va Va Va Va Va Va Va Va	e con	Pat E Pa fica 	tio	2u n 2 									52 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 55 5
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 1 2 13	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	a a g ting titir by by by by by by by by by by by	Step leser an lig an lig an lig th Litem Auth LC Call ISSN LC C Y Titt Y Aut Ser (Item	ve. Item Ite Ite Ite Vu or Num or Num or Num or Num ites	ero n ber Num r 	Pat Pat E Pa fica 	:ron itro	2u n 2 									5233456677 88 990
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 71 12 13 3	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	a a g ting titir by by by by by by by by by by by s by s by	Step. Step.S	Ve. Item Ite Ite Ite Num or Num or Num or Num ites	or mor nti. ber ISB Mum ay. Tit t	Pat Pat fica ber le P	:ron itro	2u n 2 									5233456677889900
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 71 12 13 3 8 8	RV Add RV Edi RV Del Identi: Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	a ang ting ting typy byy byy byy byy byy byy byy byy byy	step. Reser an Item Item Call ISSN LC Item Ser (Item Featu	Ve. Item Item Item Item Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num	e contra de la con	Pat E Pa Éica N	tion tio	2u n 2 									52334566778899001
12	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 12 13 3 8 5 8 5 12 13 2 5 5 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 12 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 12 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 12 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	RV Add RV Edi RV Dell Identi. Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	a tity tity bby bby bby bby bby bby bby bby bby b	step. leser an ig an ig the Auth Call ISSN LC C Y Tit Ser (Item Featu	ve. tem I Tem I Tem I Tem Nor Nor Nor Nor Lor Jus	e contra de la con	Pat E Pa fica N	tion tio	2u n 9 									52334566778899001.
¹²	1 2 3 4 5 6 6 7 8 9 10 7 1 3 8 9 10 7 12 13 3 8 8 HEL INT	N Lap RV Edi RV Edi RV Del Identi. Access Acces Access Access Access Access Access Access Acc	a ang titi titi by by by by by by by by by by by titi a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	step. Reser Jan Stan Stan Auth Call ISSN Call ISSN Colt SSN COLT SSNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNNN COLT SSNNN COLT SSNNNN COLT SSNNNN COLT SSNNNN COLT SSNNNNN COLT SSNNNNNNNNNNNN	ve Item Item Item Nor Nor Nor Nor Nor Nor Nor Nor Nor Nor	etn. blsm tri. blsm tri. t	Pat E Pat fica N	:zon itro itro (ey, (ey,	2 n 2 n 2 n 2 - - - - - - - - - - - - -									52334566778 89 90011
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 5 6 7 8 9 10 71 12 13 3 REL INT 1 5	N Lep RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi Identi. Access Ac	sy 2 ting ting fyir by by by by by by by by by by by by by	step laser an lg an lg th lten Auth Call ISSN LC Ct ISSN LC Ct ISSN Ser Ser	Ve Etem I Pe I Ce Num Nor Nor Nor Kes Jus 	or nor troi troi bess Num ey. t t E 	Pat E Pat fics N ber 	iron itro itro itro itro itro	2u n 2 n N									52334566778 8 99001111
1 <i>2</i> 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 12 13 3 8 5 12 13 3 8 5 12 13 3 2 5 5 2 5 5 2 5 5 5 5 6 7 8 9 9 10 7 8 9 9 112 13 8 5 5 6 7 8 9 9 112 13 8 5 5 6 7 7 8 9 9 112 112 112 112 112 112 112 112 112	N Lep RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Del Identi. Access Ac	sy i I ing ting fyir by by by by by by by by by by by by by by b	Step. Reser Janning this Item Auth Call ISSNC J Titt Ster Step.	Ve Item Item Item Item Item Item Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or or or or or or or or or or	m tri. bssum Tit. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t	Pat Pat fica N ber le b	(ay, (ay, (a,)	2u n 2 			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						52334566778899001111 5555555555559001111
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 6 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 1 12 13 3 REL 13 3 8 HEL 15 1 5 1 5 1 1 5 1 5 10 7 11 12 13 8 9 10 7 11 1 12 13 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	NV Add RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi Identi. Access A	y I I ga anga anga anga anga anga anga an	Resp. Resp.	Ve Item Item Item Item Item Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Num or Just 	or or or or troi ber ISB Num ey. t. t. E. 	Pat Pat fica ber 	itio itio (ey, ced)	2u n 2 									5233456677 8 89900111112
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 1 12 13 3 <i>kpti</i> 1 3 <i>kpti</i> 1 2 5 1 2	N Lep RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi Identi. Access Ac	sy 2 I g t ting t ting by by by by by by by by by by by by by by by c i e y 2 by by by by by by by by by by by by by	Resp. Resp. Resn. Re	Ve Item Item Part Item Part Item Part Item Part Item Part Item		Pat Pat Fica ber ber fica fica fica ber ber ber 	(ey)	2u n 2 n N 									5233456677889900111122
1 <i>2</i> 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 8 8 8 9 10 7 7 8 9 10 7 7 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	N Leg RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi Access	sy a ry a	step. Resp. Ig an Ig an Ig the Auth ISS Ctitr Step. Ittem Auth	ve Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Pat Pat E Pat fica N ber he pat ntea fica	(ey, (ex)	2u n 2 									555555555555566666666666666666666666666
1 <i>2</i> 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 7 1 2 5 8 9 10 7 1 2 5 1 2 3 4 2 3 4	NV Add RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Del Identi Access	sy a restriction of the synthesis of the	steper leser lg an lg the Call Call I Call	ve Itee Itee Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite Ite I	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Pat Pat fica ber ter 	Sitio (ay, (ay, (atio (ay, (atio	2u n 2 									555555555555666666666666666666666666666
1 <i>2</i> 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 13 8 <i>HELT</i> 1 2 5 1 2 3 4 5	N Lep NV Ldi RV Edi RV Edi Identi. Access	syangi titir bbbbssgal, oisyyyyybb bbbssgal, oisyyyybb bbb bbbssgal, oisyyyybb	steper Reper Ng tan Ly tan Ly tan Lull NC tturren Steen Aull Steen Ly Steen Ly Steen	ve Ite Pa Pa ST Num or Num or Num or St Jus tes Jus tes St Ide Or Num	<pre></pre>	Pat Pat Pat A fica N ber her fica fica 	(ey, (ed)	2u n 2 									555555555555556666666666666666666666666
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 101 12 3 8 7 1 12 3 8 7 1 2 3 8 7 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 101 12 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 3 8 7 8 9 101 112 8 8 8 8 7 8 9 101 112 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	N Leg NV Ldi RV Edi RV Edi SV Del Identi. Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	syanitirs tatybybyyyybb s sgal.vieyyyyybb bb s sgal.vieyyyyyy	step. leser ig an ig this Call	Ver. Ver.	tri. bbISBm T. t. bbISBm T. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t. t	Pat Pat Pat Pat Pat Pat Pat Pat	(ey, (ey, (atio	2u n 2 									555555555555566666666666666666666666666
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 101 12 3 8 5 12 3 4 5 6 7 12 3 4 5 6 7	NV Add RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi Identi Access	syanii tityiyyyyyy Sigirii Sigiri Sigi	Steper anni Ig anni Ig Itull CISCIL ILUE I	Ver. Ver. Lite Son Son Son Son Son Son Son Son Son Son Son	tribust	Pat Pat fica he b fica fica fica fica 	(ay, (ay, (atio	2u n 2 									555555555555556666666666666666666666666
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 13 8 <i>H</i> ELT 5 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 2 3 4 5 6 7	N Lep NV Ldi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RCCSS Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access Access	s a tat b b b b b b b b b b b b b b b b b	Reser Reser Star Star Star Star Star Star Star Sta	Ver v		Pat e Pa fica 	(ay, (ay, (ay, (a), (a), (a), (a), (a), (a), (a), (a)	2u n 2 									555555555555556666666666666666666666666
12 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 8 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 8 7 8 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 8 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 8 5 6 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 8 5 7 8 9 1 1 1 2 3 8 5 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 8 7 8 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 9 1 1 2 3 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8	NV Add RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Edi RV Del Identi Access	syainir titir titir titir bbbb bbbb ssgal, Nus bby yyyyy bbby bbby bbby bbby bbby bbb	Step. Reserved and the second	ve vette I I te i I te v I te i I te v I		Pat c Pa fica fica nta fica fica fica fica	(ay, (ay, (ay, (atio	2u n 2u n X 									555555555555556666666666666666666666666

 \checkmark

Ξ

	10 Message (Item Just Entered)
	3 SH Special Features
13	SKAG
1	INTRODUCTION
	1 SN Overview
	2 SN Step By Step
	1 Access by Item Identification Number
	2 Access by Author
	3 Access by Call Number
	4 Access by ISSN of ISBN
	5 Access by LC Card Number
	6 Access by Title Key 70
	7 Access by Author Title Key
	8 Access by Series
	9 Hessage (Item Just Entered)
	3 SN Special Features
14	SET STATUS
1	INTRODUCTION
	1 SS Overview
	2 SS Step By Step
	1 SS Lost
	2 SS Cound
	3 SS Patron Claims Returned 73
	4 SS Patron Lost
	5 SS Identify Item
	6 Access by Item Identification Number
	7 Access by Author 75
	8 Access by Call Number 75
	9 Access by ISSH or ISBH 76
	10 Access by LC Card Number
	17 Access by Title Key 77
	12 Access by Author Title Key 77
	13 Access by Series
	14 Message (Item Just Entered)
15	VERIFY
1	INTRODUCTION
	1 VE OVEZVIEL
	Z VE Step By Step
	3 VE Special Features 80

-

٧I

1 CS INTRODUCTION

.

:

Berginal and Superior of

1.1 CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM

The CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM is the part of ILS which maintains the location and disposition (information related to the status and patron responsibility) of all items or pieces in the collection.

INFORMATION AVAILABLE

- (1) Options of the Circulation Subsystem
- (2) Overview of the Circulation Subsystem
- (3) Special Features of the Circulation Subsystem
- (4) Glossary of terms used in the ILS System

Select the number of the option desired:

1.1.1 CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM OPTIONS

There are 15 different options in the CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM (CS). They are:

1.,	CI	= CH	IECK IN ITEMS	9.	RI	- RECEIPT FOR ITEMS CHECKED IN
3.	IL	= IN	TERLIBRARY LOAN	11.	SH	- RESERVE (ROLD) ITENS FOR PAIRONS - SHELF (ITEMS USED WITHIN LIBRARY)
ч.	HE.	- MB	ESSAGES (PATRONS/ITEMS)	12.	SN	SNAG (TRY LOCATING MISSING ITEMS)
5.	NO	= HJ	LIL OUT ITEMS	13.	55	= SET STATUS FOR ITEMS
6.	PU	= PU	JLL ITEMS FROM SHELF	14.	VE	= VERIFY PATRON/ITEM INFORMATION
7.	RC	= R2	CALL ITEMS PREMATURELY	15.	GF	GENERAL FUNCTIONS
8.	RE	= RE	ENEW ITEMS OUT ON LOAN			

For more information about any of these options select the number of the option desired or press F to FORWARD to CS OVERVIEW.

1.1.2 CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM OVERVIEW

"The CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM is composed of 15 circulation related options and 15 general function options which may be used in other subsystems as well. All of these options are organized within the HELP system in the same general format as follows:

a the second second

(1) An overview of that option

Page 1



(2) step by step procedures for that option

(3) a special features section for that option

For more information on any specific option: Press 3 to go BACKWARDS to CS OPTIONS, or F to go FORWARDS to CS SPECIAL FEATURES, or T to return to the top of this discussion

1.1.3 CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM SPECIAL FEATURES

ILS has several special features which the user needs to know in order to use the system effectively. Special Features used in the Circulation Subsystem have been divided into two separate discussions. They are:

(1) General Concepts

(2) Special Function Keys

Users should be aware of these general concepts and special function keys since they are used throughout ILS.

Enter the number of the discussion you wish to read more about, or Press F to FORWARD to the Glossary, or B to BACKUP to CS Overview, or T to TRAVEL to the top paragraph.

1.1.3.1 CS General Concepts

The following GENERAL CONCEPTS are those which the user needs to know to work in the Circulation Subsystem. They are:

1. the DISPLAY (D) command - displaying the full record of an entry

2. the FORWARD (F) command - forwarding through Item and Patron Lists

3. the BACK UP (B) command - backing up through Item and Patron Lists

4. the COMBINE (:) command - combining two instructions into one step

5. the TRAVEL (/) command - exiting out of a subsystem and into another or going to another activity within a subsystem

्र i

6. Item and Patron Lists - viewing item and patron records in ILS
 7. VIPS statement - vol/issue/part/suppl item characteristics

Page 2

7

•

1.1.3.2 the DISPLAY command

BACKGROUND

-

All indicies in ILS are organized into a list like structure. To access any patron or item record in ILS the user sust first do a search and have ILS display all known entries which match the search request. ILS will display up to 5 entries at a time. If there are more than 5 entries (which will mean some some entries will be on the next screen) users may scan all entries using the F or 8 command. (At this point users may, if they desire, press F once to read about FORWARD, and press F again to read about BACKUP. From there, you can return to this paragraph by pressing B once or twice).

The DISPLAY (D) command is used to display the full record of an entry so that the user can be sure that it is the desired entry.

Example: A patron search for J. Jones might yield 6 matches. ILS would display:

> ID 1 JONES, J. 2 JONES, JACK 3 JONES, JAMES 4 JONES, JIM 5 JONES, JONN

and on the second screen:

6 JONES, JOHN R.

RIMENBER: The user must press F to view the entries on the next screen to be sure that the correct entry is chosen. To make certain that the correct patron is chosen the user must view the full patron record to verify which J.JONES is the right patron. By pressing D followed by the entry's ID number, ILS will display for the user the full patron record of the entry. The same procedure is followed if the user wants to display a full item record in the MBF. In the above example, the user would have to view the full patron record for all 6 JONES entries, since the correct patron could have been any one of the 6 entries retrieved.

1.1.3.3 the FORWARD command

The FORWARD (F) command is used whenever ILS finds more than 5 entries while searching any ILS index. It displays for the user the next set of 5 entries, and can be pressed repeatedly for as many groups of 5 entries as there are. The user need only press F to have the next set of entries displayed. ILS will reply "NO MORE ITEM MATCHES" or "NO MORE NAME MATCHES" when the last set of entries is displayed on the screen.

FOR EXAMPLE: in the previous discussion of the DISPLAY command (press 8 to view that discussion if you desire), the user would have to press F to have __displayed the 6th JONES entry.

If you desire, press ${\tt G}$ to get to a discussion of the ${\tt F}$ key. To return to this discussion press ${\tt G}$ again.

1.1.3.4 the BACKUP command

The BACKUP (3) command is used whenever users want to return back to a previous screen of entries which have already been displayed once. If users scan through a list of matches using the FORWARD command, the BACKUP command may subsequently be used to get back through the list in reverse order. The user may press B as many times as necessary to get back up to the top of the list of found entries.

FOR EXAMPLE: In the previous discussion of the DISPLAY command (press B twice if you want to see that text) the user would have to press B once to get from the second screen back to the first. Users should keep in aind that they can only choose, or display the full record of, those entries which currently appear on the screen. They can only, for example, select from items 1 through 5 if the first screen is displayed. They must use either the F or the B command to get to the screen of entries that contains the exact entry whose record they wish to display or choose.

Press 3 if you want a discussion of the 3 key. Press G again to get back here.

1.1.3.5 the COMBINE command

The COHNIME (:) key links commands and the search key used to retrieve entries. It combines two separate steps into one by linking the first and second parts of an instruction together. Users will save a lot of time by using this option. FOR EXAMPLE: If a user wanted to CHECK OUT an item, either one of these two procedures could be followed:

WITHOUT COMBINE: ILS asks for COMMAND: User enters CO (return) ILS asks PATRON: User enters SMITH ILS begins displaying Smith entries

WITH COMBINE: ILS ASKS FOR COMMAND: User enters CO:SMITH (eturn) ILS begins displaying Smith entries

MOTE*The = key is used to retrieve item or patron entries faster, by typing the id option, =, and then the first few search key characters (e.g. for Anderson as an author or as a patron type AU=AND or PA=AND). The = key is used only to link id options and search keys; the : key links commands and search keys.

1.1.3.6 the TRAVEL command

-

The TRAVEL command (/) is used to get from one area to another within ILS. It can take the user to either different activities within a given subsystem, (e.g. from CHECK IN to PATRON STATUS) or across subsystems (e.g. from CHECK OUT to HELP for CHECK OUT). It can also be used to take users back gits wherever it was they were before they traveled to where they are now.

The following scenarios illustrate the use of the TRAVEL command:

prompts for PATRON:. After the user has completed CHECK OUT, a patron asks for the correct time. The user enters /TD and ILS takes the user to TIME AND DATE. Next the user receives a returned item and wants to go to CHECK IN. The user then types in /CI and ILS begins the CHECK IN process by prompting for ITEM:. CASE 2 TRAVELING BACK TO WHERE YOU JUST WERE a user is in the middle of a CHECK OUT and becomes confused over what to do

, user logs onto ILS and wants to go to CHECK OUT. The user enters CO in response to the ILS prompt COMMAND. ILS takes the user to CHECK OUT and

CASE 2 TRAVELING BACK TO WHERE YOU JUST WERE A user is in the middle of a CHECK OUT and becomes confused over what to do next. By entering a /HE, ILS will take the user to HELP for the activity that was in process at the time. After the user reads HELP for CHECK OUT, entering a / will take the user back to CHECK OUT to continue in that activity. NOTE that since the complete transaction Key was not pressed when the user what to HELP for CHECK OUT, once the user returns back to CHECK OUT the transaction must be started over from the beginning since it was never entered into ILS.

1.1.3.7 - Working with Item and Patron Lists

CASE 1 TRAVELING FORWARD CONTINUOUSLY

All indicies in ILS are organized into a list like structure. To access any patron or item record in ILS the user must first do a search and have ILS display all known entries which match the search request. ILS will display up to 5 entries at a time. If there are more than 5 entries (which will mean some some entries will be on the next screen) users may scan all entries using the FORWARD (7) or SACKWARD (3) command. The DISPLAY (5) command may also be used to display the full record of an entry to verify that it is the correct one. (At this point the user may press T and select a detailed discussion of these commands. The user may then FORWARD back into this discussion.)

EXAMPLE: The user has asked to see all patron matches to the search key FA=JON ILS would respond by displaying:

			-,	*************
INDEX*	TYPE	NYWE	TITLE	* The user may select an entry *
1	CIVILIAN	JONAS, JOHN	DR.	* by typing in either its name *
2	FACULTY	JONATHAN, SAM	ĦR.	* or index number(on the left) *
3	STUDENT	JONES, ARTHUR	MR.	**************************
ų.	STAFF	JONES, BETTY	15 .	
5	MILITARY	JONES, ROGER	DR.	

and on the second screen:

6 CIVILIAN JONES, THOMAS Mr.

RIMEMBER: The user must press F to view the entries on the next screen to be sure that the correct entry is chosen. To make certain that the correct patron is chosen the user must view the full patron record to verify which J.JONES is the right patron. By pressing D followed by the entry's ID number. ILS will display for the user the full patron record of the entry. The same procedure is followed if the user wants to display a full item record in the MBF. In the above example, the user would have to view the full patron record for all 5 JONES entries, since the correct patron could have been any one of the 6 __entries retrieved.

Page 5

1.1.3.8 VIPS (Vol/Issue/Part/Supplement)

The VIPS statement is essential for properly identifying a specific item which is part of a larger group of items (a.g. one issue of a serial or one volume of a sat of volumes). Any TIS activity which cills for a specific item to be identified (e.g. CHECK OUT. RIMEY. TIEM STATUS etc.) will require that the VIPS information about the item be openified before TIS onn act upon the water's request.

1.1.3.9 CS Introduction To Special Function Keys

Some terminals are equipped with what is known as special function keys or simply function keys. These special function weys provide for quick entry of frequently used TLS commands. For example, a user could use a function key to have displayed all the options available at any point in TLS. This would be faster than than having to enter a ? and then a carriage return.

Other special function keys may be set to substitute for several characters having to be typed, thereby minimizing the chance of Keying errors as well as saving time. All instructions which can be entered by special function keys, may elso be entered using the REBULAR KEYROARD of a GRT terminal. There are, in effect, two ways to enter any instruction; one with the special function key and one without function keys for the MP 1645% terminal are currently set up as listed below for more information about each, enter the number for that key:

1 ? Keysoption lisplay 4. 3 Keysjo 3ACKWARDS 7. undefined 2. - Keysgo up to the http://sidk.keysHFLD.comt 2. 2 Reysault a function 3. F Keysgo FORWARD 5. Undefined

1.1.3 10 THE ? FUNCTION KEY

The ? function key insplays all possible options that a user may select at any point in ILS. It is used instead of pressing a ? and then pressing a carriage return. The ? function saves a little time by eliminating the need to press return, and is offered primarily as a convenience key. On a HEWLETY-PACKARD 2545A termined the ? function key is marked ft.

 $\tt EXAMPLE:$ a user is trying to identify a patron. ILS prompts with PATRON: however, the user loss not know omit to do next. Pressing f1 or ? and a return will cause ILS to display:

73	TRON 1	DEN	TIFICATION OPTIONS	£	1
				f the user is shown what the	1
	7140	-	PATRON ID#	* options are and may proceed	*
-	name	-	PATRON MAME FOR FIND	* from this point forward.	x
	DP	-	FIND LIBRARY DEPARTMENT TO	•	*
	2 R	-	PATTON REGISTRATION	1	*
				***************************************	***

្វ័

de manetal de la service

٦.

Page 5

1.1.3.11 THE - FUNCTION KEY

.

The - (circumflex or up arrow) is generally used in ILS to mean GO UP to the next level within a function, or to the top of the function the user is in currently. On a HEWLETT PACKARD 2645A terminal this is the f2 key.

Example: A user, searching for a patron in PATRON STATUS, types in the wrong first letter of the patron's last name (e.g. the user typed in N instead of \square). The user may enter a - and a return or press f2 to GO UP to the prompt PATRON:.

NOTE: This special function key takes on additional meaning in CHECK OUT. In CHECK OUT the f2 or ~ key is used to instruct ILS to complete the transaction by "filing away" the information just entered. ILS will then display the prompt PATRON:. The user may now enter the next CHECK OUT transaction or travel to any other activity in ILS.

1.1.3.12 THE F FUNCTION KEY

When scanning entries retrieved in ILS (see Lists in General Concepts) or when proceeding through HELP text, users may need to search through the list or branch to additional HELP discussion. The F or FORWARD command was designed to enable the user to go on to view the next set of 5 entries or the next HELP discussion. On a HEWLETT PACKARD 2645A terminal this is set as the f3 key.

EXAMPLE: A user, searching for patron John Jones, has retrieved the following entries:

1.1	Jones, Alfred E.	***************************************
2)	Jones, Edward J.	* The user should enter F and return or f3 *
3)	Jones, J. R.	* to see the second set of entries. In all *
4)	Jones, Jim	* cases where it seems the correct entry *
5)	Jones, John R.	* is the last one displayed, use FORWARD *
		* to display the next screen to be sure *
and	on the second screen:	" the correct entry is chosen.
6)	Jones, John. T.	***************************************

1.1.3.13 THE B FUNCTION KEY

The BACK UP (B) key or f4 key is used to bring back on the screen data which uss already seen once, which the user wishes to see again. When viewing entries during an ILS search, the user may have to go back and look over again an entry which sight be the correct one. Entering a B and a return, or pressing the f4 key enables the user to back up through a list of entries or through a HELP discussion. (At this point the user may press G to go to a further discussion of the B command in CS General Concepts. Pressing G at that point will get the user back to this discussion.)

Page 7

1

;

1.1.3.14 THE VHE FUNCTION KEY

The HELP (/HE) key has been designed to provide the user with a rapid means of obtaining assistance while performing any activity in ILS. If the user is in any Circulation Subsystem activity and becomes confused as to what to do next, typing a /HE and a return or the f5 key will cause ILS to immediately take the the user to the HELP discussion for that activity.

EXAMPLE: A user in CHECK OUT tries to identify an item in ILS, and forgets what options can be used to get to the item record. When ILS prompts with ITEM: the user may at this point type either /HE and return, or press the key. ILS will take the user to HELP text of Check Out, where he can find information on how to check out an item (including information on how to item).

For HEWLETT-PACKARD 2645A terminals, the $\/HE$ function key is F5. (For more information on the special functions keys and their locations see C5 Special functions Keys.)

1.1.3.15 THE F6 FUNCTION KEY

AT THE PRESENT TIME THE F 6 KEY IS UNDEFINED

PRESS F TO CONTINUE FORWARD

OR

PRESS T TO GET TO THE TOP DISCUSSION

1.1.3.16 THE F7 FUNCTION KEY

AT THE PRESENT TIME THE F 7 KEY IS UNDEFINED

PRESS F TO GO FORMARD

OR

PRESS T TO GET TO THE TOP DISCUSSION

:

Page 8

t

1.1.3.17 THE / FUNCTION KEY

The \prime key is used to get back to the place in the ILS system where you were JUST BEFORE you arrived where you are now. If, for example, a user begins working in ILS by logging onto the system and goes to CHECK OUT, and then enters a \prime and a return. ILS will take the user back to the subsystem COMMAND level. If, however, the user goes from (i.e.) logging onto the system, to CHECK OUT, and then to CHECK IN, entering the \prime key will take the user back to CHECK OUT, which is where the user was just prior to going to CHECK IN.

REMEMBER: ILS remembers only one previous function. If the user goes from CHECK OUT to RENEW and then from RENEW into CHECK IN, the user has passed through 3 functions. If the user uses the / to go back to RENEW CHECK IN this is going back one function. Now if the user used the / again, ILS will return not to CHECK OUT, but will go to the subsystem COMMAND level instead. ILS only remembers one previous function; using the / twice in succession will cause ILS to revert back to the subsystem command level.

1.1.4 SYSTEM GLOSSARY

1

The following is a glossary of terms that should aid the user in performing functions in any subsystem:

item	Any individual piece that can be circulated or used within the library is referred to as an item. Items may range from a copy of z book to an anatomical model or a piece of hardware or equipment such as a calculator. The ILS Bibliographic structure is sufficiently flexible to "catalog" anything that the library may wish to own and circulate.
user	A user is a staff member of the library such as a clerk at the circulation desk, or a reference librarian or a cataloger.

- - -

Page 9

2 CHECK IN

2.1 INTRODUCTION

The CHECK IN procedure permits authorized users to absolve patrons of any further responsibility for items. It breaks the established link between the patron and the item, so that the patron is no longer responsible for the item.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Check In
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Check In
- 3. Special Features of Check In

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

2.1.1 CI Overview

CHECK IN is the process by which a patron is absolved from the responsibility of having checked out a given item. Items may be checked in immediately upon being returned, or they may be checked in at some later time when the circulation dask is not very busy. After an item has been checked in the patron is no longer responsible for the item.

2.1.2 CI Step By Step

.

:

CHECK IN requires the user to do 2 things:

- IDENTIFY THE ITEM(S) TO BE CHECKED IN Search ILS for this item's record or if the item is bar coded Wand the bar code label on the item.
- EXIT FROM CHECK IN Terminate CHECK IN by entering a /.

For more HELP concerning either of these steps enter the number of that step and press RETURN.

1 21

Page 10

4

1.4

1

1

÷.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM: ILS prompts ITEM: USER replies IID#=0 5# 1 90 4 USER types IID* OR -Page 11

_this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0 S# 1 90 4 in response to the prompt IIIZM.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID#" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IID# and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses

ł

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID# is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

2.1.3.1 Access by Item Identification Number

1. IID#= Item Identification # 6. TK = Title Key 2. AU = Author 3. CA = Call Number 7. AT = Author/Title Key 8. SE = Series ISSN/ISBN 9. MI = Message (for item just entered) 4. IS 5. LC #* Library of Congress #

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER A 'T' AND A RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the ILS Master Bibliographic File through alternate options. In response to the prompt ITEN, enter ? and a carriage return. ILS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are:

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER The barcode scenner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in ILS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. /CO or /CI). By wanding over a coded version of this same data, ILS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that ILS is prompting the user with ITEM. At this point the user must put the over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once ILS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say, "I recognize this item!" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

2.1.3 Identify Item

ILS asks for the IID* USER enters IID* value

2.1.3.2 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU*ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD throw-b the list or B to BACKUP.

 ID
 TITLE AND AUTHOR

 1
 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson

 2
 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user way select another search key or quit entirely.

2.1.3.3 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item. the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user sust type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or B to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

and the rive

2.1.3.4 Access by ISSN or ISBN

1

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISSN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS*0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user uishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM					
	USER replies IS	OR				
	ILS says EXTER THE	FULL				
	USER enters 0700223	1738				

ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS=0700223738

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say INERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORMARD or B for SACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID & of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID #.

2.1.3.5 Access by LC Card Number

.

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers

To access by the LC 6 the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC 6 user must then type in the LC 0. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC="9-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC 0 index to find appropriate metches (If the entire LC 0 was entered there will be only one metch if a partial LC 0 was entered there may be severe, batches. The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FDHWARD and B to BACKUP if the formest entry is found, enter the LD 0 for that entry If the user is not sure that it is the formest record the full record may be la...ei up by pressing D and the entry's ID 0

 SAMPLE:
 ILS prompts ITEM
 ILS prompts ITEM

 USER replies LC#
 OR
 USER enters LC#79-123456

 ILS says ENTER THE FULL .
 USER enters 79-123456

2.1.3.6 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words werg, a, an, the, and. United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLS KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR.IL.ME.D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may brouse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or B for SACHWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

2.1.3.7 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3,2,2.1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME & IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4,4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RUIJRN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of _the entry to see the full record of the entry.

j

Page 14

2.1.3.8 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

2.1.3.9 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

2.1.3.10 CI Complete Transaction

Exiting from CHECK IN is unlike exiting from any other circulation subsystem activity. Although the \prime key is used to exit out of CHECK IN, it does not do entirely the same thing that it does when it is used to exit from any other circulation activity. In any other circulation activity the \prime key will erase whatever transaction had just been entered just prior to entering the \prime and going up to the circulation subsystem level. IN CHECK IN, however, while the \prime will still get you up to the circulation subsystem level, it will not erase the transaction which just absolved the patron from responsibility over the item just checked in. In other words, the erasure between patron and item still stands as the user is moved up to the circulation subsystem level.

2.1.4 CI Special Features

The CHECK IN procedure has the following special features associated with it:

	1.	BEEPING	TONE	-	If the user hears a beeping tone while checking in
					an item, it means that there is a message about
					will tell the user what to do with the item. Typical
					messages could tell the user that the book is needed
-					in binding, or that it is a temporary item and must

Page 15

be sent to cataloging for processing.

2.	TEMPORARY	-	As items are checked in, it is important that the
	LABELS		user look closely at the bar code label. If it is
	or		a temporary label the item must go directly to the
	NOT		cataloging department to be processed. If the item
			has NO BAR CODE LABEL on it, the user must search
			for it using any one of the 8 item id options (see
			Identify Item under CI Step by Step Procedures).

-

з снеск ошт

.

-

ı

3.1 INTRODUCTION

The CHECK OUT procedure permits authorized uscas to assign responsibility for items to patrons. It establishes a link balween the patron and the item, making the patron responsible for the item until it is returned to the library.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Check Out
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Check Out
- 3. Special Features for Check Out

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

3.1.1 CO Overview

CHECK OUT is the procedure used by the library to maintain control of its collection. This procedure permits patrons to use the items owned by the library while providing the library with information about which patrons hold specific items and when items are due to be returned to the library. CHECK OUT requires the following two pieces of information:

 A Patron Identifier - A patron's full name registered in IIS or the bar code number for the patron, which is equal to the number IIS uses internally to identify the patron.

2. An Item Identifier - Any one of eight pieces of information about an item (e.g. title, author, call\$) or the bar code number for the individual item (a unique number for each piece) which ILS uses internally identify the item.

-

3.1.2 CO Step By Step Procedures

Check out should follow these steps:

 IDENTIFY THE PATRON Search ILS for this patron's record or do patron registration

- IDENTIFY .NE ITEM'S' TO BE DEDKED U.T Search ILS for this item's report or place temporary par follo on the item
- SUMPLETE THE TRANSACTION Record in ILS that this pattin has incoked of this item.

For more HELP concerning any of these stays enter the number of that step and press RETURN.

3.1 2.1 Identifying the Patron

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patron be accurately identified in the ILG. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library bard, or entering the equivalent Car code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OFTIONS

NAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to harrow the list down sufficiently to disging the desired patron entry. If there are note than 5 matches, ILS will say (TMEREN'S HORE) and the user may then press F or B to view edditional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the ith or 7th ones are not identical names. To see users information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the patron's name. For example, if you had a list like:

1	JONES,	JOHN	З.
2	JONES,	JOHN	э.
3	JONES	JOHN	Э.
4	JONES,	JOHN	۲.
5	JONES,	JOHN	З.

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter D2 or D3 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry. enter the index # which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PaTCON .

PATRON ID #- The Patron ID # is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's libral, lard. It is inde up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify bot, items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the wand or type in the patron name whenever possible. Nerwhy binizizing the chance of a typing error.

2306 'S

Page 19

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID\$" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IID\$ and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses _this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID® is the alpha and _numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

3.1.2.3 Access by Item Identification Number

See. . . .

 1. IID#= Item Identification #
 5. TK
 = Title Key

 2. AU
 > Author
 7. AT
 = Author/Title Key

 3. GA
 = Gall Mumber
 8. SE
 = Series

 4. IS
 = ISSN/ISBN
 3. HI
 = Message (for item just entered)

 5. LC #= Library of Congress #

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER A 'T' AND A RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITENS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCARKER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the IIS Master Bibliographic file through alternate options. In response to the prompt ITEM, enter ? and a carriage return. IIS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are:

The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in TLS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. /CO or /CD). By wanding over a coded version of this same data, TLS users will not experience the problems associated with minkeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that TLS is prompting the user with TTEM. At this point the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once TLS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say. "I recognize this item;" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

3.1.2.2 Identify Item

IDENTIFYING ITENS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before any transaction can be recorded into ILS local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information, putting it into the system at some later time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON REGISTRATION. appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may compine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0 s# ! 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM: USER types ILD\$ OR USER replies IID\$=0 \$\$? 90 4 ILS asks for the IID\$ USER enters IID\$ value

3.1.2.4 Access by Author

Accessing on item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or 3 to BACKUP.

1D TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

3.1.2.5 Access by Call Number

1

located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Deway, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

Prge 20

the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt IIEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or B to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

3.1.2.6 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in tesponse to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM USER replace IS ILS says Exter THE FULL... USER enters 0700223738

ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS=0700223738 ŧ

4

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say INERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID 0 of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 0.

3.1.2.7 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC # the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC # user must then type in the LC #. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one __by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then

Page 21

search the UC # index to find appropriate matches. If the entire LC # was entered there will be only one match: if a partial LC # was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID # for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record way be called up by pressing D and the entry's LD #.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IC# OR USER enters LC=^?~123456 ILS says ENTER THE FULL... USER enters 79-123456

3.1.2.8 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the TLS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR.IL.ME.D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the swarch key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S NORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID 5.

3.1.2.9 Access by Author Title Key

٠

1

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3,2,2,1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LASI NAME & IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLA.BODY for the entry Body functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

. '

3.1.2.10 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the prost ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or 3 for BACKUP.

3.1.2.11 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

3.1.2.12 Complete Transaction

After the correct patron and the correct item(s) have been identified into the ILS, the user must now COMPLETE THE TRANSACTION. It is not sufficient to stop here, because up to this point the data has not been permanently filed away. The user must complete the transaction by pressing the - and a return or by pressing the f2 key in order to have ILS permanently file the transaction away.

To complete a circulation subsystem transaction, the user must press either special function key 2 or the up arrow or ~ key. This will cause the data stored in the terminal to be transmitted to the computer and recorded in the Master Subliographic File. In the event that a user does not want to complete the transaction (e.g. if a demo is being given, or if a patron decides at the last minute not to check out this brok after all) PRESS ABORT or the SPECIAL FUNCTION 8 key or \prime and return and the transaction will be erased completely. It will be the same as if the data had never been typed in in the first place. This also means, however, that if the user fails to press ~ or function 2 key IMMEDIATELY after entering the last item, the good data could be erased tooll!

3.1.3 CO Special Features

There are some special features in CHECK OUT that users should be aware _______of which may be of help when performing CHECK OUT. They are:

Page 23

'. Due Data Override - Users may overlide the due date for an item after it has just been checked out by entering two characters. DD for Due Date. IIS will then ask for a new due date. Users may then enter an actual new due date or a symbolic new due date. An actual new due date or a symbolic new due date. An actual new due date or a symbolic new due date. An actual new due date means entering the actual date an ited is due (430/80). A symbolic due date means advancing the due date a certain number of days from today and is entered as T+some number. If the item was originally due 4/15, by typing T+15 it will now be due on 4/30. MOTEF IF the item just checked in is a serial temporary item, type 'S' instead of T+7. 'S' is equal to one loan period of 7 days.

- 2. The Patron at the When searching the IIS Patron List for the correct "Bottom" of the patron, users sust NOT assume that the last patron on the screen (the 5th one displayed) is the only patron with that name. If the last name on the screen seems to be the correct entry, users should still go FORWARD one screen to find out if there are any more entries with the same name. The chances of this happening are especially high for compon surnames such as Smith, Jones or Brown.
- 3. Special Use of - The / key used in CHECK OUT does something MORE tha / Key to than it does generally in ILS (see CS Special Quit and Erase Features for a general discussion of the / key). the transaction Here, if you want to quit checking out an item because (a.g.) you made an error or want to go to some other function and if you DO MOT want ILS to make any record of this event (you must not have pressed the COMPLETE TRANSACTION key yet), you may then enter \prime or \prime and some other function code (i.e. /CI or /HE) and ILS will take you there. Note that if you enter only the \prime , ILS will take you wherever you were before you came to CHECK OUT. REMEMBER: the / will not record any items that were in the process of being checked out to the last identified patron.

:

Page 24

4 INTER-LIBRARY LOAN

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The INTERLIBRARY LOAN procedure is used when borrowing items from or lending items to other institutions. When used in conjuction with CHECK OUT and CHECK IN it permits the library to keep an accurate racord of all Interlibrary Loan activity.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of IL

2. Step by Step Procedures For IL

3. Special features for IL

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

4.1.1 IL Overview

HELP TEXT FOR THIS ACTIVITY IS IN PROCESS. FUTURE RELEASES OF ILS SOFTWARE WILL INCLUDE THIS MATERIAL.

LOCAL ILS SITES THAT WISH TO CREATE THEIR OWN HELP DISCUSSIONS ARE REFERRED TO THE ONLINE DOCUMENTATION IN ILS "HELP".

4.1.2 IL Step By Step

HELP TEXT FOR THIS ACTIVITY IS IN PROCESS. FUTURE RELEASES OF ILS SOFTWARE WILL INCLUDE THIS MATERIAL.

LOCAL ILS SITES THAT WISH TO CREATE THEIR OWN HELP DISCUSSIONS ARE ERRED TO THE ONLINE DOCUMENTATION IN ILS "HELP".

4.1.3 IL Special Features

7

1

When using the ILL routine, users must remember to first create a temporary record for the item to be borrowed from another library. ILL only serves to record the fact that an interlibrary loan transaction has taken place, it DOES NOT do anything to directly affect the CHECK IN or the CHECK OUT of the item.

5 MESSAJE

5.1 INTRODUCTION

The MESSAGE procedure allows the library staff to attach a free text message to the patron record or the item record.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Message

2. Step by Step Procedures For Message

3. Special Features for Message

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

5.1.1 ME OVATVIAW

MESSAGE

MESSAGE allows the library staff to attach a free text message to the patron record or the item record. For example, a pessage attached to the item record might note torn or missing pages. A patron message could notify the patron that, a.g., the reference department had found information which he or she had requested earlier. Messages are automatically displayed whenever the record to which they are are attached is called up. These messages may be saved or deleted after being displayed.

5.1.2 ME Step By Step

Ξ

MESSAGE allows the authorized user to leave a message associated with either a: 1. patron record or

2. item record

If the user wants to leave a massage in a patron record, the necessary response to the question (P OR I) is P. To assign the message to a specific patron, the user has four options for identifying the patron. Type in either:

a. the patron's identification number in the system
b. the patron's name (surname first) or a truncation of surname
c. DP, then the identification code of a library department
d. PR, then a full, new patron registration (for unregistered ones).
Note that the patron's bar code can also be wanded for identification.

DETAILED PROCEDURES for Patron Message

- a. Enter either the patron's id number or his surname or a truncated version of it. The id number is the numeric version of the bar code. If the system is able to locate the petron's record, you will be prompted to retype the id number based on the found record (found from name). You may also retype a truncated version of the name for the same effect The screen will then display 1> at the left margin. You may now enter the first line of the message. Two more lines may be added (when you see 2>Note that any messages already assigned to the patron are disand 3>). played before the 1> appears.
- b. Provide patron's surname, first name, etc. or a truncation. If his record is found, the 1> will appear at the left margin. You may type the first line of the message and continue to line 2 (at 2>) and line 3 (at 3>). c. Not currently operational.
- d. See HELP instructions for Patron Registration. Go to the General Func-tions module (selection #16 under Circulation module) and select #13 (Patron Registration).

If you wish to associate a massage with an item in the library's collection, respond to the (P OR I) question with I. To assign a message to an item. there are nine options. Type in either:

- a. The item's id number
- b. AU (to identify by author's name)
- c. CA (to locate by call number)
- d. IS (to find the item by ISBM or ISSN)
- e. LC (to identify by Library of Congress number)
- f. TK (to identify by author key) g. AT (to find by author-title key)
- h. SE (to find by series)

i. MI (to larve a message for the previously entered item). Note that if the item is in hand, its label can be wanded for identification.

DETAILED PROCEDURES for Item Message

ŧ

- a. Provide the item's id number. If the item's record is found, the 1> will appear at the left margin. You may type the first line of the and continue to line 2 (at 2>) and line 3 (at 3>). Note that any messages already assigned to the item appear above the 1>.
- b. Key in the author's name, surname first, or a truncation of it. Then pro-vide the index number indicated when the retrieved name is displayed. If the number is accepted, the 1> will appear at the left mergin as before. Froceed to key in your message.
- c. Type in the call number or a truncation of the item for which you wish to leave a message. Provide the index number as in b. above. When the 1> appears, type in your message.
- d. Key in the number of the item or a truncation of it. If multiple options are offered, select the correct one and enter its index numbe. When the the 1> appears, key in your message.
- Provide the LC catalog number of the item. When the 1> appears, type the **e** . Bessage.
- f. Type the appropriate characters of the title key (the first 3 characters of the first word, first 2 of the next, first 2 of the third, and first

ľ

of the fourth, each separated by commas). When the item is found, type

Page 27

its index number. Key in the message when the 1> appears at it margin. g. Provide the appropriate letters for the author-title key (first 4 characters of each, separated by commal. Next key in the index numbur.

- g. provide the appropriate letters for the author-title key (first + characters of each, separated by comma). Next key in the index numoun. Provide the message when 1> appears.
 h. Type the series heading or a truncation of it. If a truncation, select the appropriate index number when it appears. When the 1> appears type
- in the message.
 i. ILS will display the item you had last entered in the Circulation Subsystem. A message may be added when the 1> appears at the left margin.

5.1.3 ME Special Features

:

- Message is a generalized form of Pull. Thus when a patron or item record is retrieved, other messages may already be assigned to it.
- 2. When displaying information retrieved from a search of the files based on a truncated term, ILS will display five (5) retrieved entities at a time. There may be more than five that were retrieved. To view all entities retrieved, continue to press F to advance in the list. When the list is exhausted, there will no longer be a prompt at the bottom of the screen saying THERE'S MORE. To go backward in the list, push B.

Page 28

. '

TERN De la Service

6 MAILOUT

5.1 INTRODUCTION

The MAIL OUT procedure is used to produce a mailing label for items sent out of the library.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Hail Out

2. Step by Step Procedures For Hail Out

3. Special Features for Mail Out

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

6.1.1 HO Overview

Nail Out generates a mailing label to send an item in the library collection to a patron. Both the patron and the item must be identified by the system to generate the correct label. The patron may be identified by id number, by name, as a library department, or by defining a new patron through patron registration. The item may be identified by one of eight identifiers or as the previously entered item which the system will identify for you.

6.1.2 HO Step By Step

PU Special Features

1. When displaying information retrieved from a search of the files based on a truncated term. ILS will display five (5) retrieved entities at a time. There may be more than five that were retrieved. To view all entities retrieved, continue to press F to advance in the list. When the list is exhausted, there will no longer be a prompt at the bottom of the screen saying THERE'S MORE. To go backward in the list, push 5.

_6.1.3 HO Special Features

As of June 23, 1980, there are no special features for the MAILOUT function.

-

t

-

Page 29

7 PULL

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The FULL procedure is used to identify items that are to be removed from the shelf (e. g., periodicals to be bound).

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Pull

2. Step by Step Procedures For Pull

3. Special Features for Pull

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

7.1.1 PU Overview

The PULS procedure is used to identify items that are to be removed from the shelf (e.g., periodicals to be bound). This module works like Massage in that both patron and item records are flagged with a messees. In this case, the message is to pull an item (which may be assigned to a library patron or department) from sirculation.

7.1.2 PU Step By Step

PULL allows the authorized user to identify an item (and a patron currently associated with it? so that the item can be removed from circulation. First the item must be identified to the system. The user must enter one of the following:

a. the patron's identification number in the system

b. the patron's name (surname first) or a truncation of it c. DP, then the identification code of a library department

d. PR, then full, new patron registration (for unregistered ones). Note: the patron's bar code can also be wanded to identify the patron to the system.

Setziled Procedures-Patron ID for PULL

a. Enter the patron's id number, if known. The next prompt will be for the item identification. See DETAILED PROCEDURES for Item Identification for Pull below.

b. Enter the patron's surname or a right truncation of it, if known. If a truncation of the name is entered, a choice of candidates will be dis-played. Select the corresponding index number and type it in. The sur-name and its id number in parentheses will be displayed. The mext prompt will be for the id of the item to be pulled. •

. '

Page 30

-

I

c. Not presently operational. d. See HELP instructions for Patron Registration: Go up to the Circula-tion module and select #16 for General Functions. Select #13 of General functions for HELP on Patron Registration. Next the system will prompt you for the item identification. The following choices are available to identify an item. Enter either: a. the item's id number b. AU (to identify by author's name)
c. CA (to locate by call number) a. IS (to find the item by ISBN or ISSN)
 a. LC (to identify by Library of Congress number) f. TK (to identify by author key) g. AT (to find by author-title key) h. SE (to find by series) 1. MI (to flag the previously entered item to be pulled). Detailed Procedures-Item ID for PULL a. Provide the item's id number. If the item's record is found, the date is needed next. b. Key in the author's name, surname first, or a truncation of it. If a truncation, provide the index number indicated when the name is displayed c. Type in the call number or a truncation of it for the item to be pulled. If a truncation, provide the index number as in b. above. d. Key in the number of the item or its truncation. If a truncation, key in the index number which corresponds to the listed item to be pulled. a. Provide the LC catalog number of the item. f. Type the appropriate characters of the title key (the first 3 characters of the first word, first 2 of the next, first 2 of the third, and first of the fourth, separated by commas). When the item is found, type the in-dex number of the correct item in the list. g. Provide the appropriate letters for the author-title key (first 4 characters of each, separated by a comma). Next key in the index number shown. h. Type the series heading or a truncation of it. If a truncation, enter the index number of the appropriate item. i. ILS will display the item you had last entered in the system. 7.1.3 PU Special Features 1. Pull is a specialized form of Message. Thus when a patron or item record is retrieved, other messages may already be assigned to it.

2. When displaying information retrieved from a search of the files on a truncated term, ILS will display five (5) retrieved enties at a time. The may be more than five that were retrieved. To view all entities retrieved, continue to press F to advance in the list. When the list is exhausted, there will no longer be a prompt at the bottom of the screen saying THERE'S MORE. To go backward in the list, push 3.

Page 31

-

1

į

3 RECALL

8.1 INTRODUCTION

RECALL is used to generate a notice to a specific patron, asking that an item currently checked out to that patron, be refurned to the library. It could be that another patron needs the item, or that the item is needed in binding or for an exhibit.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Recall
- 2 Step by Step Procedures For Recall
- 3. Special Features for Recall

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

5.1.1 RC Overview

"ISCALL is used to generate a written notice to a patron, asking that an ital currently checked due to them be returned to the library. The ILS Patron Record keeps track of the patron's address and other identifying information, and thus information is, therefore, typed out onto the recall notice automatically. The user is required to enter only item identification duta

3 1 2 RC Step By Step

RECALL requires the user to:

1 IJENTIFY THE ITEM: The user may use any one of the various item identification options. For an in depth discussion of this, press 1 to continue.

3 '.2.: Identify Item

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCUDE SCANNER. The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in ILS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. <CC or <CI). By quanding over a moded version of this same data, ILS users will not experience

Page 32

ţ

-

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID?" in response to the ILS prompt IYEM. ILS will then ask for the IID? and the user shou'd enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID**0 \$* 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM. SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM: ILS prompts ITEM:

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon may to access an item in the ILS system. The IID# is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEN: USER types IDD# ILS asks for the IID# USER enters ID# valua

8.1.2.3 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done _____to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an

Page 33

. . .

·····

.

i.

 \mathbf{C}^{\pm}_{i}

ł

8.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Number

IID#= Item Identification # 5. TX = Title Key
 AU = Author 7. AT = Author/Title Key
 CA = Call Number 8. SE = Series
 IS = ISSN/ISBN 9. MI = Message (for item just entered)
 LC #= Library of Congress #

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER & 'T' AND & RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT A BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under thes: pircumstances users may instead access the IIS Haster Bibliographic File through alternate options. In tesponse to the prompt ITEM, enter ? and a cerriage return. IIS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are

the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the iser must first be sure that IIS is prompting the user with ITEM. At this point, the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instand of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once IIS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say, "I recognize this item?" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

individual or pange or entries.

SAMPLE: AUMANDERSON ILS AILS AISPLAN ALS ENTRES ALTH ANDERSON AU Author, Althout repart to Anderson. The Aser may select the lessies liter by its liter number. If there are mins than 5 entries the Aser may solar through the liter of 3 th 220122

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR
The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hons Obristiannon
The Biotraphy of by Anderson, Faniy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY.

If the user is unsure about an entry reing the introit entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to insplay the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry the D command LD particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or amongoous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot in found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

8.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or rome other visible part of an item. the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient. And popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific Area. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dawey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicing's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILE prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL GALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter GA+QA76.'S in response to the LLS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number LLS will display 5 entries at a sime on the streen.The user may press % to FORMARD or 3 to go BACKWARDS through the list.To see the full record of an stem enter D and the item's ID number.

8.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the idencities of both serials and conographs respectively. They are heavily used in the requisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired tem. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and

Page 34

. .

1

.....

the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS+0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM		ILS prompts ITEM			
	USER replies IS	OR	USER replies IS#0700223738			
	ILS SAYS ENTER THE FULL.					
	USER enters 0700223738					

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible metches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S HORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID 8 of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 8.

8.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Humber

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the Library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC 0 the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC 0.user must then type in the LC 0. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC 0 index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC 0 was entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC 0 was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and 3 to SACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID 0 for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID 0.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM		ILS prompts	1758
	USER replies LC*	OR	USER enters	10=79-123456
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL			
	USER enters 79-123456			

Page 35

-

Ł

8.1.2.7 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first rew characters of the first few significant words in the title Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, "United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.3 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user bust enter TK in response to the TIS prompt ITEM. TIS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DCR.TI.ME.J. TIS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \clubsuit .

8.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

the AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 0,0 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise tetrieval than a 3.2.2 1 title key.

to access by author/titls key the user must enter AT in response to the IIS prompt ITEM. INS will respond with ENTER IST " CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME C IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as presented. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AtrALIA.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. INS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORMARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

8.1.2.9 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Naster Dibliographic File by the SERTES heading. Catalogers and other library staff way find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are tost notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency of corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the _promt ITEN. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the ZSE command

Page 36

ł

for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials theck in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity. whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than S, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or S for BACKUP.

8.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

8.1.3 RC Special Features

· ...

•

-

I

Local ILS sites may wish to design their own forms for recall notices, as there is no current ILS standard for the design of these forms.

Page 37

.

9 RENEH

.

9.1 INTRODUCTION

RENEW is the process by which patrons are allowed to extend their loan of an item for some longer period. Renewal policies are locally determined and it is anticipated that each ILS library will want to add their own documentation in the HELP system, outlining local policies.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of RENEW
- 2. Step by Step Procedures for RENEW
- Special Features of RENEW

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

9.1.1 RE Overview

An item may be renewed by a patron by telephone or when both the patron and the item are present at the library proculation desk. The item to be percendency be due that day, overable, or even have some time left on the initial circulation period. Libraries wary in their policies on renewal, Depending on the type of patron, or whether the item was loaned via inter library loan or not, the item way or may not be renewable. Some policies are:

- o. Items may be renewed for an additional circulation period.
- o Items may be renewed, but only for a shorter period--one
- week gather than three.
- Items may be renewed only once or they may be renewed indefinitely as long as there are no reserves.
- No item may be renewed if it has been reserved for another patron.

Each YLS library will have to incorporate their local policies into RENEW.

9.1.2 RE Step By Step

_TO RENEW an item that has been checked out, the user must

 IDENTIFY THE PAIRON Locate the record of a registered patron in the ILS Patron List.

=

Page 38

,

ł

÷

- IDENTIFY THE ITEM Locate the record of the item to be renewed in the ILS system.
- COMPLETE THE TRANSACTION Transmit the record of this renewal transaction into the ILS computer.

9.1.2.1 Identifying the Patron

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patron be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library card, or entering the equivalent bar code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS

NAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, IIS will say (THERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or B to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the patron's name. For enample, if you had a list like:

1	JONES,	JOHN	5.
2	JOHES,	JOHN	D.
3	JOHES,	JOHN	D.
4	JONES,	JOHN	F.
5	JONES,	JOHN	R.

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter 52 or 53 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry, enter the index ϑ which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRON().

PATRON ID 8- The Patron ID 8 is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron "by be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the Land or type in the patron name whenever possible, thereby minimizing the chance of a typing error.

Page 39

····

ļ

.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to entic their patron data into the system before any transaction can be recorded into ILS. Local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information, putting it into the system at some later time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON REGISTRATION.

9.1.2.2 Identify Item

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER

The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in IIS. Using the barcode wend eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. /CO or /CI). By wanding over a coded version of this same data, IIS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that IIS is prompting the user with IIEM. At this point the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once IIS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say. "I recognize this item!" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT A BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the ILS Waster Bibliographic Fils through alternate options. In response to the prompt INEW, enter 2 and a carriage return. ILS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affines short messages to an item record they are:

additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are:

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER A 'I' AND & RETURM TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

			TCEM TOGUCITICSCION .	۰.	15	= IICLE KEY
2.	ΑU		Author	7.	AT	= Author/Title Key
3.	CA	3	Cail Number	8.	SE	= Series
ч.	IS	×	ISSN/ISBN	9.	NI	= Message (for item just entered)
5.	LC	\$ =	Library of Congress 👌			

9.1.2.3 Access by Item Identification Humber

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet _uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The TD\$ is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines hich make up the ber code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID#" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IID# and the user should __enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label.If a user chooses

Page 40

this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0 = \$\$ 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

 SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM:
 ILS prompts ITEM:

 USER types IID\$
 OR
 USER replies IID\$=0
 \$\$ 1 90 4

 ILS asks for the IID\$
 USER enters IID\$ value

9.1.2.4 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or guit entirely.

9.1.2.5 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

- **?***

_To access by call number the user aust type in CA in response to the ILS

Page 41

i

prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wisnes to combine these two steps the user way enter CA=CA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wisnes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

9.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt INDA. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISSN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN meed be entered.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS OR ILS says ENTER THE FULL... USER enters 0700223738 ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS=0700223738

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by "yping F for FORMARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID & of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID #.

9.1.2.7 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the _sataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 1 additional numbers.

To access by the LC # the user must type in LC in response to the LLS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC #.user __aust then type in the LC #. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one

Page 42

I

by entaring LC=79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITSN. ILS will then search the LC \oplus index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC \oplus was entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC \oplus was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID \oplus for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID \oplus .

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM				
	USER replies LC#	OR	USER enters	LC=79-123456		
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL					
	USER enters 79-123456					

9.1.2.8 Access by Title Key

.

1

500-rat

÷

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an. the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3,2,2,1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEN. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3,2,2,1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR, TL.ME, D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or 3 for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

9.1.2.9 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTNOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3,2,2,1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER 15T 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME & 1ST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of

Page 43

. . . .

the entry to see the full record of the entry.

9.1.2.10 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all metches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or 3 for BACKUP.

9.1.2.11 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entared.

9.1.2.12 RE Complete Transaction

After the correct patron and the correct item(s) have been identified into the ILS, the user must now COMPLETE THE TRANSACTION. It is not sufficient to stop here, because up to this point the data has only been sent to the terminal; it has NOT been transmitted into the computer. Completing the transaction is the way by which the information is transmitted from the terminal into the computer.

To complete a circulation subsystem transaction, the user must press either special function key 1 or the up arrow or - key. This will cause the data stored in the terminal to be transmitted to the computer and recorded in the haster Bibliographic File. In the event that a user does not want to complete the transaction (e.g. Af a demo is being given, or if a patron decides at the last minute not to rensw the book(r) after all PRESS JBORT or the SPECIAL FURCTION 8 key or 2 and meturn and the transaction will be erased completely. It will be the same as if the data had never been typed in in the first place. This also means, nowever, that if the user fauls to press - or function 2 key THMEDIATELY after entering the last item, the yood data could be erased tool::

Page 44

-

9.1.3 RE Special Features

.

There are some special features in CHECK IN that users should be awate of which may be of help when performing CHECK DUT. They are:

- 1. Due Date Override Users may override the due date for an item after it has just been checked out by entering two characters. DD for Due Date - ILS will then ask for a new due date. Users may then enter an actual new due date or a symbolic new due date. An actual new due date means entering the actual date an item is due (4/30/80). A symbolic due date means advancing the due date a certain number of days from today and is entered as T+some number. If the item was originally due 4/15, by typing T+15 it will now be due on 4/30. NOTET If the item just checked in is a serial temporary item. type 'S' instead of T+7. 'S' is equal to one loan period of 7 days.
- 2. The Patron at the When searching the ILS Patron List for the correct "Bottom" of the patron, users must NOT assume that the last patron on the screen (the 5th one displayed) is the only patron with that name. If the last name on the screen seems to be the correct entry, users should still go FORWARD one screen to find out if there are any more entries with the same name. The chances of this happening are especially high for common surnames such as Smith, Jones or Broun.
- 3. Telephone versus In Person Renewal In Person Renewal In Person Renewal In person or over the phone. If the renewal is a telephone renewal the user must locate the item to be renewad from the list which appears after the patron has been ifentified. If the renewal is made in person, by either the borrower or someone else for them, the user may either select the item from the list, or may wand the bar codes of the items instead. Before wanding over the bar codes, however, the user should be retain that the correct perion has been identified, otherwise you could renew an item to a person who never checked it out in the first place. Is eabove The Patron at the Bortom of the Lisk.

Page 45

Ξ

ł

YD RECEIPT DHECK IN

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The REDEIPT CHECK-IM procedure is used to provide a receipt to a patron for returning an item or for paying a fine lused in place of DEFCM-14

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Receipt Check-In

2. Step by Step Procedures For Receipt Theck-In-

3. Special Features for Receipt Check-In-

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire.

10.1.1 RI Overview

RECEIPT CHECK IN is used whenever a patron specifies that a receipt be generated, itemizing what they have just returned to the library. This feature has been designed to accommodate those ILS sites where personnel regulations may require documentation of a clear account before final administrative action (i.e. final payroll tabulation, release of college transcripts) may be taken.

NOTE: the software required for this activity is currently being developed. It is expected that future ILS releases will include this public.

10.1.2 RI Step By Step

-

In RI the user is required to:

 IDENTIFY THE ITEM: Access ILS via any one of the available item identification options to display the desired record.

2. CREATE A RECEIPTE THIS POUTINE IS NOT SURNAULY OPERATIONAL IT IS ANIGLAPIED THAT FULURE REVEASES OF THE ILS WILL INCLUDE THIS MODULE

230A 46

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID\$" in response to the ILS prompt IIEM ILS will then ask for the IID\$ and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses

this option, it is assential that the characters be entered exactly as they

appear any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a grong match of no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0 S# 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM:		ILS prompts IIEM:		1 90 4
-	USER types IID*	яc	175% reblies files	**	

Page 47

numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the ber code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

7. 17 = Atther/Title Key 5. SI = Series 7. NI = Message (for item just entered) 2. AU = Author 3. CA = Call Number 4. IS = ISSN/ISBN 5. LC #= Library of Congress * 10.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Humber

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The ILD) is the alpha and

5. TK

= Title Key

NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEN IDENTIFICATION OFFICA ENTER A 'T' AND A RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION))

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances usels may instead access the ILS Master Sibliographic file through elternate optics. In response to the prompt ITEM, enter 7 and a carriage return. ILS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short asserges to an item record. They are:

IDENTIFIERS LEATER ALSO THE DAY (STORE) The Barrode scanner is the fastes of the Using the Barrote wand eligitates of the Using the bardole want elistrates with the version of the version in the table parton fata. The tata and the true of the version of the vere

13 1 2 1 Identicy Itam

IDENTIFYING ITERS WITH THE BART FOR SHOW

> TTD9= Item Identification 5

. .

10.1.2.3 Abcess by Author

Ancessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname of a partial signame. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual of range of entries.

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the lesired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORMARD through the list or 3 to SACMUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson. Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson. Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct antry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to varify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or cubiguous information of is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may relect another search key or quit entirely.

10.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item. the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more tenoum schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the follection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones:

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA75. (5 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to go SACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

Page 48

10.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

.

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM		ILS prompts ITEM		
	USER replies IS	OR	USER replies IS=0700223738		
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL.				
	USER enters 0700223738				

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S NORE. The uses may broke through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID 4 of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 4.

10.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC # the user must type in LC in response to the TLS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC #.user must then type in the LC #. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the TLS prompt TEM. ILS will then search the LC # index to find appropriate matches. If the entire LC # was entered there will be only one match, if a partial LC # was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORMARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID # for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID #.

Page 49

ł

ŝ

SAMPLE: IIS prompts ITEM ILS prompts ITEM ILS prompts ITEM ISER replies 100 OR USER enters 10077-100455 IIS says ENTER THE FULL... USER enters 79-120456

10 1.2.7 Access by Title Key

Title access in the IIS system is almost the same is unat is fore in the fill system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first trucharacters of the first few significant words in the title. Actiones and other stop listed words (e.g. a, any the, and. United States) are conted the key 3.2.2 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first more donted first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the first character of word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM, ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 2.2.2.3. (2015) if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to till in the set These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK+DCR IL.ME.T. ILS will set by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE 5 MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORMARD or B for SAXMARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID #

10.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOMATITLE key is a combination key used to sort but more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title in this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2.2.1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME 4 IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Alired. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the Green. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry 13 for the correct record the user may press D for DISPIAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

2age 50

-

1

÷-

.....

10.1.2.9 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

10.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

10.1.2.11 RI Create Receipt

HELP TEXT FOR THIS ACTIVITY IS IN PROCESS. FUTURE RELEASES OF ILS SOFTWARE WILL INCLUDE THIS MATERIAL.

LOCAL ILS SITES THAT WISH TO CREATE THEIR OWN HELP DISCUSSIONS ARE REFERRED TO THE ONLINE DOCUMENTATION IN ILS "HELP".

10.1.3 RI Special Features

-

ł

HELP TEXT FOR THIS ACTIVITY IS IN PROCESS. FUTURE RELEASES OF ILS SOFTWARE WILL INCLUDE THIS MATERIAL.

LUCAL ILS SITES THAT WISH TO CREATE THEIR OWN HELP DISCUSSIONS ARE Referred to the online documentation in ils "help".

Page 51

. . . .

II RESERVE

11.1 INTRODUCTION

The RESERVE procedure is used to identify an item to be put on reserve and begins the process to reserve the item.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Reserve
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Reserve
 - Special Features for Reserve

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

11.1.1 RV Overview

RESERVE is used to alert users that another patron would like to check out an item that has just been checked in. RESERVE sets up a message in ILS. "ITEM IS ON RESERVE...ENTER 'C' TO CONTINUE, RETURN TO TERMINATE..." which signals the user that the patron requesting the reserve be told that the item has been returned. Local ILS sites may detauming whether the item is to be checked out and sent to the patron requesting the reserve, or if a notice is to be sent advising that the reserve will be cancelled if the patron does not appear within (e.g.) 3 days to check out the item.

RESERVE enables users to either add, edit, or delete requests to reserve items. RESERVE can modify entries in either an item queue or a patron queue. The item queue lists all the patrons who are waiting to check out a given item; the patron queue lists all the currently checked out items a given patron has asked the library to reserve.

11.1.2 RV Step By Step

In RESERVE users may either:

- 1. ADD a reserve request.
- 2. EDIT a reserve request, or
- 3. DELETE a reserve request.

When either delating or editing an already established reserve request, ILS will prompt the user to specify whether they wish to access the 'I'TEM QUEUE OR 'P'ATRON QUEUE. When creating a reserve request for the first time, ILS _automatically prompts the user for PATRON: since no record currently exists in

Page 52

.

.

either queue.

For more information on any of the above choices the user should anter the number associated with that choice.

11.1.2.1 RV Add a Reserve

To add a reserve request the user must respond to the following ILS prompts:

- A. IDENTIFY THE PATRON To display detailed instructions for patron identification options enter 1.
- 3. IDENTIFY THE ITEM There are 8 item identification options, and one other option by which a message can be input for the last item entered. For more HELP on using any one of these options enter the number associated with that option below:

2) ITEM ID# 5) ISSN/ISBN 8) AUTHOR/TITLE KEY 3) AUTHOR 6) LC# 9) SERIES 4) CALL# 7) TITLE KEY 10) MESSAGE (ITEM)

- C. IDENTIFY THE COPYS Specify the copyS of the item to be reserved.
- D. SET THE PRIORITY Identify the order in which this reserve is to be handled.
- E. SET DATE NOT NEEDED AFTER Enter the last possible date the patron can wait. If the date entered has past, ILS will say "YOUR TYPED DATE IS PAST, TYPE FUTURE DATE".
- F. ROUTING INFORMATION If desired, the user may enter a free text message, detailing further what should happen to the item once it has been returned.
- G. PRESS RETURN The user must enter a carriage return to finish. ILS will prompt again to add the next reserve.

11.1.2.2 RV Editing an Item or Patron Queue

ILS allows users to edit an zlready entered reserve request by accessing either an ITEM QUEUE (i.e. all patrons waiting for a particular item) or a PATRON QUEUE (i.e. all items that a given patron is waiting to receive).

"ILS begins by prompting the user:

'I'tem QUEUE OR 'P'ATRON QUEUE: The user must respond with either an I or P. ILS will prompt the user as detailed below in each respective case.

Ξ

÷

2age 53

To edit ITEM QUEUE ILS will ask for:	"To edit PATRON QUEUE ILS will ask for: "
ITEM: Select any one of the available	*PATRON: The user may use any of the
access options. For more HELP on	available patron id options.
any option, enter the number of	For more HELP on these options
that option as it appears below:	<pre># enter 1.</pre>
2)IID# 4)CA 6)LC 8)AT 10)MI	X Contraction of the second seco
3)AU 5)IS 7)TK 9)SE	T
	1
Edit the ITEM QUEUE (cont'd)	*Edit the PATRON QUEUE (cont'd)
COPY: Enter the number of the item to	** TITLE AUTHOR COPY RESERVE EXPIRES
be reserved.	#1 Cats Smith : 7-4-80
	1
WHICH PATRON?: ILS displays the queue	*WHICH ITEM?: ILS will list all items
of existing patrons and the user	* reserved by the patron.
must enter the number of the ent	ry#
to be edited. ILS will display t	he*POSITION IN QUEUE: Enter the number of
following table:	*the item to be edited.
	x
Patron Copy Not Needed Aft	ar#COPY: The user must enter the correct
1 Selander 1 5-25-80	z copy number.
2 Duncan 2 6-30-80et	c. *
	*DATE NOT NEEDED AFTER: Enter the new
PRIORITY: 1/The user may edit priority	# date not needed after.
of the reserve request(default=1), *
	*ROUTING INFORMATION: A free text
ROUTING INFORMATION: A free text messa	ge* message may be entered and
may be entered and edited. The	# edited. The user must REPLACE
user must REPLACE a string of	* a string of characters WITH a
characters WITH a new string of	* new string of characters.
characters.	1
	x
We will send this book to Windery.	 Route to Registrar first.
REPLACE: WI WITH BI	#REPLACE: first With last
We will send this book to Bindery	 Route to Registrar last.

11.1.2.3 RV Deleting an Item or Patron gueue

ILS allows users to delete an already entered reserve request by accessing either an ITEM QUEUE (i.e. all patrons waiting for a particular item) or a PATRON QUEUE (i.e. all items that a given patron is waiting to receive).

ILS begins by prompting the user:

'I'tem QUEVE OR 'P'ATRON QUEUE: The user must respond with either an I or P.

ILS will ask for:	ILS will ask for:			
ITEM: Select any one of the available "PA" access options. For more HELP on " any option, enter the number of " that option as it appears below: " 2)IID# 4)CA 6)LC 8)AT 10)MI " 3)AU 5)IS 7)TK 9)SE "	TRON: The user may use any of the available patron id options. For more HELP on these options enter 1.			

Page 54

	Delete the ITEM QUEUE (cont'd)	*Delete the PATRON QUEUE (cont'd)
COPY:	Enter the number of the item to be reserved.	<pre>## TITLE AUTHOR COPY RESERVE EXPIRES #(ILS will list and number all items #reserved by the patron.) #</pre>
мнісн	PATRON?: ILS displays the queue of existing patrons and the user must enter the number of the entry to be edited. ILS will display the following table:	WHICH ITEM?: Enter the number or the
	 Patron Copy Not Needed After Selander 1 5-25-80 Duncan 2 6-30-80etc. 	x x x x
	Delete the ITEN QUEUE (cont'd)	*Delete the PATRON QUEUE (cont'd) α
OK TO	DELETE? NO// Enter a 'Y' and a RETURN to delete. Enter RETURN to leave the record unchanged.	<pre>*OK TO DELETE? NO// Enter a 'Y' and a * RETURN to delete. Enter RETURN * to leave the record unchanged. *</pre>
DELETI	ED (or) NOT DELETED	*DELETED (or) NOT DELETED *
ILS wi	ill return to the prompt OPTION:	* ILS will return to the prompt OPTION:

11.1.2.4 Identifying the Patron

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patron be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library card, or entering the equivalent bar code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS

NAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, ILS will say (THERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or 3 to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the patron's name. For example, if you had a list like:

1	JONES,	JOHN	Β.
2	JONES,	JOHN	D.
3	JONES,	JOHN	D.
4	JONES,	JOHN	Ε.
5	JONES,	JOHN	R.

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select

1

Page 55

1

-

the correct entry, you could enter -52 or -53 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry, enter the index # which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRON:.

PATRON ID #- The Patron ID # is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the wand or type in the patron name whenever possible, thereby minimizing the chance of a typing error.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before any transaction can be recorded into ILS. Local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information, putting it into the system at some later time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON REGISTRATION.

(1.1.2.5 Access by Item Identification Number

Identifying items by their ITEN IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID* is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vextical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IIDS" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IIDS and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IIDS=0 \$\$ 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM:	ILS prompts ITEM:					
	USER types IID\$	OR	USER replies IID#=0	5 \$	19	04	
	ILS asks for the IID#						
	USER enters IID# value						

11.1.2.6 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item

Page 56

÷ .

l

1

-

humber. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or 3 to BACKUP.

TITLE AND AUTHOR
 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson
 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item. to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit antirely.

11.1.2.7 Access by Tall Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item. the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Madicine's being the more renoum schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA+SAT6 15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number FUC will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to 70 BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item entar D and the item's ID number.

11.1.2.8 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEN. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISBN/ISBN. The user _nust then enter in the value. The user may instead complete these two steps

Page 57

into one by typing IS=0700233733 in response to the ISS prompt ITEM IIS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the iser wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value 2200 screet, orrect. If the user wishes to see a range of entries depinning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM
	USER replies IS OR	USER replies IS=0700223738
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL	
	USER enters 0700223738	

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID % of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID %.

11.1.2.9 Access by LC Card Humber

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC $\hat{*}$ the user must type in LC in response to the TLS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with EXTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL IC $\hat{*}$.user must then type in the LC $\hat{*}$. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC=79=123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC $\hat{*}$ index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC $\hat{*}$ was entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC $\hat{*}$ was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORMARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID $\hat{*}$ for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID $\hat{*}$.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM		
	USER replies LC+	OR	USER enters	13=19-123456
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL			
	USER enters 79-123456			

11.1.2.10 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few

Page 53

characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States, are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to watch the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fought word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEN. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR.TL.ME.D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

11.1.2.11 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4.4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2.2.1 title Key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME & IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) ATALIA.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and E for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

11.1.2.12 Access by Series

Under the IIS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the bickedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index is find a match. ILS will insplay all matches and if there are more than 5, the

Page 59

user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

11.1.2.13 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

11.1.3 RV Special Features

~

-

I

There are no special features required for RESERVE at this time.

Page 50

12 SHELF

12.1 INTRODUCTION

The SHELF procedure is used by library thaff to enter statistical information on items being used internally (as opposed to externally via check out or renew).

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Shelf
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Shelf
- 3. Special Features for Shelf

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire

12.1.1 SH Overview

The SHELF procedure records internal usage of an item. SHELF is normally used by a shelver who passes a barcode scanner over the barcode label of the item to identify it. SHELF enables the user to count the number of times an item has been taken off the shelf but not checked out.

When the ITEM STATUS option is used. ILS will display a statistical record of any item. One line of this display appears below:

CHECKED OUT IN THIS PERIOD: _____ INTERNAL USAGE: ____

When an item is identified in the SHELF function, the count of INTERNAL USAGE is increased by one.

Press 'f' and a RETURN to go forward to Step By Step Procedures for SHELF.

12.1.2 SH Step By Step

_SHELF consists of only one step:

3. IDENTIFY THE ITEM - It is assumed that the item will be identified with a portable barcode scanner. For information on this and other methods of identification, see below.

lage 5'

Ξ

Page 52

To access by the item identification number, enter the Key "IID#" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IID# and the user should enter the sympols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user thooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or types will yield a

Identifying items by their ITEM IJENTIFICATION NUMBER is one j. (ble) yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILG system. The ILD® is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar gode and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 50 characters long.

12.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Yumber

١.	110#=	Itam Identification #	5. TK	= Title Key
2.	* Ľ.	Author	7 A.T	= Author/Title Rey
3.	CA +	Call Number	8. SE	 Series
а.	IS #	ISSN/ISBN	9. HI	= Hessage (for item just entered)
5.	10 #=	Library of Congress 🖡		

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OFTION ENTER & 'T' AND & RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead actess the ILS Master Bibliographic File through alternate options. In response to the prompt ITEM, enter ? and a carriage return. TLS will display 4 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are:

DENTIFYING ITCMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER The barcode scanner is the fastast way to complete any transaction in TLC. Fring the barcole wand eliminates the need for naving to type in lengthy patron lata, item data and the transaction sympols le g =00 or 11 By wanding over a coded version of this same data. TLS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that TLS is prompting the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that TLS is prompting the user with TEM. At this point the user must first be sure that TLS is prompting the barcode label, and move the point of the wand over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would wild a is all that is needed. The TLS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say. If recognize this item?" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it

"2.1.2." Identify Item

For more HELP concerning this step press (1) and a SETURM
wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0. S# 1.30.4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE: IIS prompts ITEM: IIS prompts ITEM: USER types IID# OR USER replies IID#=0 \$# 1.90 4 IIS asks for the IID# USER enters IID# value

12.1.2.3 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON IIS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

1D TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

12.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the GALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Deway, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To actess by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to

• ...

Page 63

.

combine these two steps the user may enter $CA=2A^{-6}$. (5 in response to the ULS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number IIG will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or B to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

12.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM		ILS prompts ITEM
	USER replies IS	OR	USER replies IS=0700223738
	JLS says ENTER THE FULL		
	USER enters 0700223738		

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORMARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID 9 of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full ecord for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 9.

2.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the Library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and _3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC # the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will, then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC #.user must then type in the LC #. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then __search the LC # index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC # was

Page 64

i

entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC \$ was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID \$ for that entry. If the user is not suze that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID \$.

 SAMPLE:
 ILS prompts ITEM

 USER replies
 LC#

 ILS says ENTER THE FULL...
 USER enters LC=79-123456

 USER enters 79-123456

12.1.2.7 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3,2.2.1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3,2,2,1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR, TL.ME, D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID #.

12.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title in this case a 4.4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2.2.1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with SMTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME 5 IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.30DY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORMARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the entry to see the full record of the entry.

.*

Page 55

ł

Ξ

12.1.2.9 Access by Series

Under the IIS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than S, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

12.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

12.1.3 SH Special Features

-

ł

As of July 8, 1980 there are no known special features for SHELF.

Page 5ó

13 SHAG

13.1 INTRODUCTION

The SNAG procedure permits authorized users to set the status of an an item to 'Snag' and to produce a series of search slips. SNAG means that an item is not on the shelf but it has not been declared lost.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Snag
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Snag
- 3. Special Features for Snag

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

13.1.1 SN Overview

SNAG is used when an item is not in its place on the shelf but cannot yet be declared LOST. When an item is 'snagged' its status (as read in ITEM STATUS) will be set to 'SNAC' and a search slip will be produced. ILS will produce search slips according to Circulation Parameters set by the system administrator. Slips way be produced at regular intervals for any length of time set locally. When ILS has produced all of the slips called for, for axample - one slip per week for three weeks, the status will automatically be changed to LOST.

To SNAG an item the user needs to identify the exact item. For Step By Step instructions go FORWARD.

13.1.2 SN Step By Step

1

The SNAG procedure requires only that the user identify the item. ILS will prompt for ITEM: When a unique item has been identified ILS will list it and prompt for another item. The user may continue to enter items or enter a '/' and a RETURN to leave the SNAG procedure and return to a previous activity.

SNAG assumes that the user does not have the item in hand. ILS gives the _____user 9 Item Identification Options:

1.	IID		Item Identification	₹ 5,	•	IΚ		Title Key
2.	λU		Author	7	•	ΑT		Author/Title Key
3.	C A		Call Number	8		SĽ	*	Series
4.	ÍS		ISSN/ISBN	9	١.	MI	*	Massage (for item just entered)
<u>_</u> s.	LCO	۲	Library of Congress	ŧ				

Page 67

For more HELP enter the number of the desired option or FORWARD to Special Features.

13.1.2.1 Access by Item Identification Number

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The ID® is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "ITO\$" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IID\$ and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID\$=0. \$\$ 1.90 % in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM:		ILS prompts ITEM:		
	USER types IID\$	OR	USER replies IID\$≈0	5 8	1 90 4
	ILS asks for the IID\$				
	USER enters IID\$ value				

13.1.2.2 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR
I The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson
I The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

_DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or amoiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be

Page 68

÷

found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

13.1.2.3 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item. the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world, (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

13.1.2.4 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user waits a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user Wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM
	USER replies IS OR	USER replies IS=0700223738
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL	
	USER enters 0700223738	

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by ______typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user

Page 59

.

must type the ID 4 of the correct match. If the user wants to see the cull record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 4.

13.1.2.5 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item tataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by Librarias to order printed catalog cards from the Library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging in Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 thatacters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers

To access by the LC # the user must type in LC in response to the LLS prompt ITTH. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL DR PARTIAL LC # user must then type in the LC #. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC*79-123456 in response to the LLS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC # index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC # was entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC # was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the interest entry is found, enter the LD # for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID #

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM				
	USER replies LC#	OR	USER enters	10=19-113456		
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL					
	USER enters 77-123456					

13.1.2.5 Access by Title Key

Title access in the IIS system is almost the same as what is fone in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title Key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the Key) These 2 staps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK*DOR.IL.ME.D ILS will realy by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search Key If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or 3 for BALKWARDU. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID #

Page TO

5

7

13.1.2.7 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to surt out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4.4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2,2.1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER 1ST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME & IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say INERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

13.1.2.8 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access recolds in the Master Bibliographic File by the SLRIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will series heading requires only 52 in response to the 125 prompt (125,) 125 Will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and IJS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches ar. if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or 3 for BACKUP.

13.1.2.9 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation _Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

13.1.3 SN Spacial Features

5

_As of July 8. 1980 there are no known special features for SNAG.

Page 71

.

'4 SET STATUS

14.1 INTRODUCTION

The SET STATUS option is one way library staff can document the reason why an item is not available to patrons. It creates a note within the ITEM STATUS record advising users what the current status of the item is.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Set Status

2. Step by Step Procedures for Set Status

Please enter the number of the information you desire:

14.1.1 SS Overview

SET STATUS is a collection of 4 separate routines, which collectively serve to note the status of items thought to be lost or missing. SET STATUS modifies the status of an item in the Item Status display. Although doing a CHECK OUT or a CHECK IN will cause the Item Status record to be autometically updated, users must call upon SET STATUS to update the Item Status record for lost or missing items.

SET STATUS may prove to be a useful means of keeping track of lost or missing items, by providing library management with statistics as well as advising acquisitions of possible reorders.

14.1.2 SS Step By Step

SET SIATUS is used to modify the status of an item in the Item Status Display. It is a collection of 4 seperate routines, each of which is detailed below.

() LO - for LOST if you are positive that the item is lost

2) FO - for FOUND if the item turns up later

3) PC - for PATRON GLAIMS it was RETURNED

- - -

4) PL - for PATRON believes it is LOST

for more HELP with any of these steps enter the number of that step and press RLTURN.

Page 72

I

-

14.1.2.1 SS Lost

The LOST option in SET STATUS is used whenever library staff have conclusively determined that an item is indeed lost. Before this designation is put on the Item Status record, avery attempt should be made to search the shelves for the item.

To change the item's status to LOST, the user must enter 10 in response to the ILS prompt FUNCTION:. ILS will then prompt the user for any one of the regular ILS item id options. After the item has been identified ILS will prompt again for the next lost item. The user must press / and RETURN to get out of the current SET STATUS option. ILS will take the user back to the place where the user was just prior to coming to SET STATUS.

To read about how to identify an item in ILS enter a 1 and a RETURM.

.

14.1.2.2 SS Found

In SS, FOUND is used whenever an item, which has been previously declared LOST or PATRON CLAIMED RETURNED, is found and it's status needs to be updated. To update the item's status in the Item Status display, the user must enter F0 in response to the ILS prompt FUNCTION: ILS will reply by asking the user to identify the item via anyone of the item identification options.

For more HELP on item identification options press 1.

14.1.2.3 SS Patron Claims Returned

In SET STATUS, the option Patron Claims Returned is used whenever a patron states that they have returned an item which is currently missing. ILS keeps a separate "lost file" of items patrons claim to have returned, but which still have not been found after searching. The "lost file" tracks patrons who repeatedly claim to have returned a missing item. Each record in the file contains the item and patron ids and the date the patron was to have returned the item. Library management may want to set in-house guidelines to handle cases where patrons repeatedly claim to have returned missing items.

NOTE: Every time a CHECK IN or a RENEW is done. ILS will automatically search the "lost file" to look for a matching entry. If the item being checked in or renewed is in the "lost file," it's status will be automatically updated in the Ttem Status display.

To select this option, enter PC in reponse to the ILS prompt FUNCTION:. To learn more about how to identify an item press ?.

Page "3

7

ł

44,5 2.4 SS Patron Lost

In SET STATUS, the Patron Lost option is used whenever it has been referanced that a patron has lost an item snecked out to them. This starts whereas somewhat from Lost, insofar as it can be referanced that the satisfy to word the item was checked out, was responsible for the loss. (Bud the loss hot been snecked out to any patron the Lost option would be correct.

To select this option enter PL in response to the ILS proved $\rm Electric 4$. To learn more about how to identify an item press $^{-1}$

14.1.2.5 SS Identify Item

τ

!

In most pases, when the user is in SET STATUS the item will not be in hand. This may limit significantly the thoraes available by which in them Tay be identified the full range of item identification options have been included in this HELP incussion, however, as it is possible that in why given instance one or more or these access options may be applicable.

Enter the number of the desired item identification option:

1	1104=	ltem Iientification 🔹	6 .	ΤK	2	Title Key			
2 .	A.U. =	Author	7.	ΑT	Ξ	Author/Title	Кеу		
3.	CA =	Call Number	8.	SΕ	Ξ	Series			
4.	IS =	IJSK/ISBN	۰.	ΝI		Message (for	1760	just	entered)
5.	LC \$=	Library of Congress 🕴							

14.1.2.6 Access by Item Identification Number

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID\$ is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which take up the bar code and it found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID*" in response to the IIS prompt JTEM. IIS will then ask for the IID* and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's par code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entaring IID#=0 the 190 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM:		ILS prompts 1747-		
	USER types IID\$	OR	USER replies IID#=0	5 \$	1 10 4
-	ILS asks for the IID*				
	COER enters IID# value				

2	а	đ	æ	74
		_		

.

14.1.2.7 Access by Author

ì

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORMARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully semingful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user say select another search key or quit entirely.

14.1.2.8 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item. the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library ~f Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL JALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.'S in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the stepe. The user may press F to FORWARD or B to go BACKWARDS through the list.To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

Page 75

-

* ----

14.1.2.9 Access by ISSN or ISBN

....

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing ISto700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. LIS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM
	USER replies IS OR	USER replies IS=0700223738
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL	
	USER enters 0700223738	

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the scraen. If there are more than 5 metches Its will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the metches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKHARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID # of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID #.

14.1.2.10 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog catds from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC * the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEN. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC \pm user must then type in the LC \pm . It is possible to combine there 2 steps into one by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the LLS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC \pm index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC \pm was seaton the 10 * index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire 10 * Was entered there will be only one match: if a partial LC # was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID # for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record _ say be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID #.

Page 76

ł

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM USER repliem LCO OR ILS mays ENTER THE FULL... USER enters 79-123456 ILS prompts ITEM JSER enters LC=79-123406

14.1.2.11 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter dommas consecutively to fill in the key). These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR, IL, ME. D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing f for FORWARD or 3 for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID ϕ

14.1.2.12 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works. It is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2,2,1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME 6 IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLA.30DY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

Page 77

Ξ

14.1.2.13 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the VSE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a VSE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or 3 for 3ACKUP.

14.1.2 14 Message (Item Just Entered)

Ξ

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

Page 78

. -

----- ---

15 VERIFY

15.1 INTRODUCTION

The VERIFY procedure allows the authorized user to radically alter the way in which ILS operates. In VERIFY On mode, ILS will display the patron name or item title every time a barcode label or library card is scanned with the barcode scanner. In VERIFY Off mode (standard ILS operation), processing is much faster but patron names and item titles are not displayed.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Verify
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Verify
- 3. Special Features for Verify

Please enter the number of the type of information you deside:

15.1.1 VE Overview

VERIFY sets a switch in ILS which determines whether or not the patron name or item title is displayed when a library card or a beroode label is scanned.

1. VERIFY=ON - When a patron or an item ID number is entered into ILS (during CHECK CUT or CHECK IN for example), the computer will go to the magnetic disk which stores all item and patron information and find the complete record for that item or patron. The name or title is then sent to the tarminal and displayed on the screen.

2. VERIFY=OFF - When a patron or an item ID number is entered into ILS, the computer will record the ID and continue with the transaction. The patron name or item title will not be displayed on the screen. ILS will find the complete record on the magnetic disk later, while the user continues with other transactions. This is much faster for the user and more efficient for ILS than VE=ON.

For Step By Step procedures for VERIFY enter 'F' and a RETURN.

15.1.2 VE Step By Step

1

To change the setting of VERIFY the authorized user may enter

/VE=ON OR /VE=OFF

in response to any ILS prompt. ILS will change the setting and return ______the user to the previous prompt.

Page 79

It is also possible to change the VERIFY satting in a two step process. The user enters VE in response to the ILS prompt IOHMAND and then enters either ON or OFF as appropriate.

30

15.1.3 VE Special Features

-

1

As of July 8, 1980 there are no known special fratures for VERIFY.

LISTER HILL CONTRACT REPORT TO 30-03 JULY 21, 1980

31

THE INTEGRATED LIBRARY SYSTEM

USER'S MANUALS

CIRCULATION SUBSYSTEM AND GENERAL FUNCTIONS

LISTER HILL NATIONAL CENTER FOR BIOMEDICAL COMMUNICATIONS NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE

A CONTRACT REPORT TO THE LISTER HILL NATIONAL CENTER FOR BIOMEDICAL COMMUNICATIONS NATIONAL LIBRARY OF "EDICINE

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HE MAN SERVICES + 2 Jone Health Service + National Institutes of Health

INTEGRATED LIBRARY SYSTEM JSER MANUAL

-

\$ i.

1

GENERAL FUNCTIONS

July 21, 1980

EQ.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	GF INTRODUCTION	1
2	ADD ROUTING	7
-		-
	TAIRODUCTION	6
	1 AR OVERVIEW	2
	2 AR Step By Step	2
	1 Identify Item	3
	7 Brease bu Then Tdentsfightion Number	2
	T WORDS DY TEM INCHTITESTON NUMBER	3
	3 ACCess by Author	4
	4 Access by Call Number	4
	5 Access by ISSN or ISBN	5
	6 Access by LC Card Number	5
	7 Access by Title Key	-
		3
	8 Access by Author Title Key	6
	9 Access by Series	7
	10 Message (Item Just Entered)	7
	11 AR Identification of Patron	7
		•
	13 Identifying the Patron	3
	14 AR Delete Name	9
	15 AR List Name	9
	16 AR Exit Add Routing	10
		10
	J AK Special features	10
3	DETAIL	13
	1 INTRODUCTION	11
	1 DE Overview	11
	2 BE STAR BU STAR	1.1
	PATE TREM	
-		14
	1 INTRODUCTION	12
	1 EI Overgiew	12
	2 EI Step By Stap	12
	1 Identify Item	12
	1 Japan by The Identification Number	
	2 Access by item Identification Aumber	1.3
	3 ACCESS DY AUTROT	14
	4 Access by Call Number	14
	5 Access by ISSN or ISBN	15
	6 Access by LC Card Number	15
	7 Icraes bu Title Kau	16
	· HOUSED BY LICE REPAIR	10
	o Access by Author fitle Key	10
	9 Access by Serles	17
	10 Message (Item Just Entered)	17
	11 EI Edit Item Record	17
	1) PT File Them	10
	16 64 644 4080	
_	S EL SPECIAL FEATURES	18
5	EXPERIENCE	19
	INTRODUCTION	19
	1 EX Overvlew.	19
	7 Y Chan Bu Chan	10
	e respect of areaster and a second	17

:

Integrated Library System User Manual

1 į

1

,

GENERAL FUNCTIONS

JUL 10, 1930

ž 4

6	HELP MAINTENANCE	
	3 OVERVIEW Of HM	
	1 HM - Overview 20	
	2 HM - Purpose	
	3 HM ~ Description	
	2 RASIC CONCEPTS OF HM 22	
	1 UN Concepts - Deverant	
	I Inf Concepts - Falaglaph.	
	1 Hn Concepts - Paragraph - 2 - Lxample	
	Z HM Concepts - Paragraph ~ 5 ~ Size Limits	
	3 HM Concepts - Paragraph - 6 - Text & Structure	
	2 HM PROCEDURES - PATH 24	
	1 HM Concepts - Paths - 2 - Linkages 25	
	2 HM Concepts - Paths - 4 - Branch on response	
	3 HM Concepts - Manual	
	4 HM Concepts - Directory 25	
	3 PROCEDURES OF AU.	
	1 HM Procedures - Paragraph Add	
	2 HM Procedures - Adding to the Directory	
	3 HM Procedures - Adding a New Manual	
	4 HM Procedures - Linking Paragraphs into Paths	
	5 HM Procedures - Linking Paragraphs into Manuals	
	6 HM Procedures - Editing Paragraph Text	
	7 HM Procedures - Editing Paths	
	I w procedures _ Fditing Manuals	
	o nn rioceulias - fuiting hendels	
	An Procedures - fulting the prectory	
	10 HA Procedures - Editing Manual Entry Points	
	11 HM - Procedures - Utilities 44	
	1 HM - Procedures - FIND Utility	
	2 HM - Procedures - VIEW Utility	
	3 HM - Procedures - DELETE Utility	
7	ITEN DELETE	
	1 INTRODUCTION 48	
	2 ID Step by Step 40	
	1 Identify item 49	
	2 Access by Item Identification Number	
	3 Access by Author 50	
	4 Access by Call Humber 50	
	5 Access by ISSN or ISBN	
	5 Access by LC Card Number	
	7 Access by Title Key 52	
	A locate by luthor Title Key 52	
	7 AUGUSS DY WELLES	
	10 nessage (item Just Entered)	
	33 ID Delete Record	
	3 ID Special Features	
8	ITEM STATUS	
	1 INTRODUCTION	
	1 IS Overview	,
	2 IS Step By Step	j.
	1 Identify Item	<i>.</i> .
	2 Access by Item Identification Number. 56	

-

	a a bu dunah a		57
•	3 Jeess by Anthon		-
	A Yacasa phi jari Anuber		: 0
	5 Access by ISSN of IUSN.		
	5 Access by LC Card Mumper		20
	7 Access by Title Keyss success sectors and the sector of the		59
	a locat by Author Title Key	4.4.4	59
			50
			÷ 0
			50
	11 IS Print Utatlister to the second second state of the second		· ·
	12 IS Special reacures		4.2
Э.X	EWLY CATALOGED ITEM		
:	TRODUCTION		
	1 NE DVerview		22
	2 ME Step By Step		52
	1 SFADCH FOR ITIM	a a a a ser e e	63
	2 WF Them Found OI Not		53
	b NE Than To MBE and Tabe File		54
	3 AL LUEM IN TARA F1'S		55
	· 또 이용 고양한 또 또 보험한 가수가 다 아이지 않는 것 같은 것이 있는 것이 있는 것이 있는 것이다. 이가 있는 것이 있 것이 있는 것이 있 것이 있는 것이 있다. 것이 있는 것이 있		6.5
	5 ME Item In Abbasia and a second		4.5
	6 NE Items In Marther File		6.5
	7 NE Edate Record		
	8 ME Enter Barcode Data	• • • • • • •	
	3 NE Special Features		3
10	PATRON ACTIVITS		6 1
1	TNTRODUCTION.		69
,			5 P
			69
	1 PA STEP BY STEPT AND A CONTRACT AND A CONTRACTACT AND A CONTRACTACT AND A CONTRACTACTACTACTICACTACTACTACTACTA		7.0
	<pre>:dentily_rig _ret ration</pre>		- ·
	3 PA Special reatures		~ 2
11	PRINT BARCODE		7.2
1	INTRODUCTION		
	PB Overview		
	2 P3 Step By Step	• • • • • • •	
	1 PB Identify Items		7.3
	? Scense by Item Identification Number		73
	7 Acres by Author		74
	a scence by Call Number		74
	 Recess by TSSN or TSSN 		75
	J ACCESS by ISSN 04 IS		7.5
	5 ACCess by 50 Card Rumber		75
	7 Access by Title Key		- 4
	8 Access by Author litle Key		
	9 Access by Selles		
	10 Message (Itam Just Entered)		
	11 PB Identify Patron		
	12 95 Batch Frint		2.4
	3 PB Special Features		é C
12	2 11 11 1.11 1.1 1.1 1.1 1.1 1.1 1.1 1.1		30
· 4	18.400 0001211111 1111111111111111111111111		30
			30
	- A D. MARIATRA MATTACKA AND A STREAM AND A ST A STREAM AND A STREAM AND AND A STREAM AND A ST A STREAM AND A STREAM AND AND AND A STREAM AND AND AND AND A STREAM AND		30
	7 in Zueb sk prebring and a second seco		31
-	1 Identity of the Patron		3.2
	2 PD Delete Patzon		3 -
	3 - 35 Spectal Features	1.1.1.1.1.1.1	٦.

-:

1

<u>l</u>v

13	PRINT	TEMPO	RAR	r L		2 Z	• •																													. :	33
1	INTRO	DUCTI	ON.																																	. 8	33
	1 PT	OVEEV	ıew				• •																													. i	33
	2 PT	Step	8y 3	Ste	р.																													• •		. 4	33
	3 PT	Speci	al	Fea	tui	c e s	s .																													. 1	84
14	PATRO	REGI	STR	ATI	NO.			, .																												. 8	35
1	INTRO	DUCTI	ОМ.																																	. 8	85
	1 PR	Overv	164																																		35
	2 28	Step	8y :	Ste	р.																	• •														. 1	85
	3 P.R	Speci	ai 1	Fea	tus	c e :	s .																													. 4	36
15	PATRO	STAT	us.																÷														Ì				88
1	INTR	DUCTI	ON.																÷							÷					÷						88
	1 25	Overv	2.61																		÷			÷									÷		÷		88
	2 25	Step	Rv S	Ste					÷										÷		÷		į			÷.							÷				8.8
	1 1	Identi	fvi	nor	the		P	tr		'n.	ċ								Ċ							÷				•	•		÷		·		ē ā
	3 25	Speci	a 1 1	Fea	tur						·		÷						·	• •	Ċ		•		• •				• •					• •	•		90
15	TTHE	0 0 1 T F						• •	·	• •	•	• •		•••	·	•				•••	·	•••	•	•	•••		•••		•••		• •	•••		•••			a 1
			~ ~ ·	•••	••	••	•••	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•	• •	•	• •	•	•	•••	•	• •	•	• •	•••	•	•••	•	•••	·	• ,	

=

1 GF INTRODUCTION

••

11

-

GINERAL FUNCTIONS is a collection of functions which may be used within any subsystem of ILS. For example they may be used while in either the Circulation or Administrative subsistems. These functions are of general use and interest so they do not fit well into a single subsystem and therefore are generally available system wide (if the user profile specifies their availability).

Page 1

.

1. ADD ROUTING9. PATRON ACTIVITY2. DETAIL10. PRINT BARCODE3. EDIT YIEM11. PATRON DEUTE4. EXPERIENCE12. PRINT TEMPORARY LABEL5. HELP TEXT HAIN/EMANCE13. PATRON REGISTRATION6. ITEM DELETE14. PATRON STATUS7. ITEM STATUS15. TIME & DATE8. NEWLY CATALOGED LIEM

Select the desired option or go back to the Subsystem option list

• •





MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART NATINAL BUREAS OF STANLARDS DWILL A

•

.

.

2 ADD ROUTING

2.1 INTRODUCTION

The ADD ROUTING procedure permits authorized users to add/delete names on routing slips. When journals are checked in via SERIALS CHECK IN, routing slips for newly received journals may be printed, so that the journal may be routed to patrons or to their final destination, such as a branch library. The ADD ROUTING procedure permits users to add or delete names to routing slips that will be produced during SERIALS CHECK IN.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Add Routing
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Add Routing
- 3. Special Features for Add Routing

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

2.1.1 AR Overview

ADD ROUTING is used to add or delete patron names to routing slips used to circulate serials as they are chacked in.

ADD ROUTING requires that the user supply:

1.	The Item Identifier(s)	 the code number for the individual item (a unique number for each piece) which ILS uses internally to identify the item(s) to be routed.
2.	A Patron Identifier	 the code number for the patron (a unique number for each patron) which ILS uses internally to identify the patron.

. .1

• •

2.1.2 AR Step By Step

In ADD ROUTING the user must:

1.	IDENTIFY THE	ITEM(S) TO B	E ROUTED	
	This section	explains how	to search	through
	the ILS syste	am for the ap	propriate i	ten.

 IDENTIFY THE PATRON(S) This section explains how to add/delete names from an item's routing slip.

Page 2

11

~

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID\$" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then ask for the IID\$ and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses _this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they

5 L. I

code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The ILD# is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet

2.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Number

'1

1. IID#= Item Identification # 6. TK * Title Key 2. AU = Author 3. CA = Call Number 7. AT = Author/Title Key 8. SE Series = Message (for item just entered) 4. TS ISSN/ISBN 9. MI 5. LC ** Library of Congress *

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER A 'T' AND A RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the ILS Master Bibliographic File through alternate options. In response to the prompt ITEM, enter ? and a carriage return. ILS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are:

The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in ILS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy petron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. /CO or /CI). By wanding over a coded version of this same data, ILS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that ILS is prompting the user with ITEM. At this point the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would not? a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little mooth strong is all that is needed. Once ILS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say, "I recognize this item?" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

2.1.2.1 Identify Item

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER

For more HELP concerning any of these steps enter the number of that step and then press <RETURN>.

3. EXIT FROM AR This section explains how to use the '/' command to exit from Add Routing.

90

Page 3

1 1

1. 1 -

. •

4

÷ .

. 1

i.

.

÷

appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0 ## 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM: USER types IID® ILS asks for the IID® USER enters IID® value

2.1.2.3 Access by Author

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing f to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this itam, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

2.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then

Page 4

91

.

ł

1

÷

i

the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or B to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

2.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

.

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with EMTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE :	ILS prompts ITEM		ILS prompts ITEM						
	USER replies IS	OR	USER replies 15=0700223738						
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL								
	USER enters 0700223738								

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID θ of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 8.

2.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by Libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC 0 the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC 0.user must then type in the LC 0. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one _____by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then

...**_1**

Page 5

92

ł

search the LC # index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC # was entered there will be only one match: if a partial LC # was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORMARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID # for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID #.

 SAMPLE:
 ILS prompts ITEM
 ILS prompts ITEM

 USER replies LC®
 OR
 USER enters LC=79~123456

 ILS says ENTER THE FULL...
 USER enters 79-123456

2.1.2.7 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3,2,2,1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3,2,2,1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR, TL.ME, D. LLS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

2.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2.2.1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user sust enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER 15T 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST MAME 6 1ST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

ĨĨ

Page 5

93

]]

2.1.2.9 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or 8 for SACKUP.

2.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem. ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

2.1.2.11 AR Identification of Patron

Once the item has been identified, the user will want to identify the patron(s) connected with that item's routing slip. The computer will prompt the user with the serial ID and copy number, and say:

(P)ERMANENT OR (T)EMPORARY? TEMPORARY/

This concerns the status on the routing slip of the intended patron. There is no great difference between the two choices. With a temporary status, the patron acknowledges that he will not be on the routing slip forever, but his name will not be deleted from the routing slip until someone goes through the process necessary. The system will never delete a name from a routing slip without being told to do so. The user enters the desired status with either a 'P' or a 'T'.

Once the status is entered, the user has several options. They are:

. 1

<1> Add Name to File <D> Delete Name from File <L> List Names in File </> Go back to subsystem (see Exit From AR) <-> Go back to function (see AR Special Features) <C> Change Temporary/Permanent

Page 7

14

1

-

If the user discovers he has entered the grong status command, he can change it with the 'C' option. For example, if he has entered 'P' for Permanent and realizes he wants to work with the Temporary status file, entering a 'C' will switch him to Temporary.

The Add Routing function is unique because it identifies first how the patron is affected on the routing slip and then identifies the specific patton. When the patton is identified the chosen function will be executed sutomatically.

The following functions relate directly to the routing slip. They are common to both the Permanent and Temporary status.

- Add Name How to add a name to a routing slip
 Delete Name How to delete a name from a routing slip
- 3) List Name How to list all patrons on a routing slip.

Indicate by number the function you want.

2.1.2.12 AR Add Mame

To add a name to an item's routing slip, the user must enter A in response to the ILS prompt OPTION:. ILS will reply:

PATRON:

The user must now begin to enter all the names that are to be added to the routing slip. After the last name has been entered, the user must enter a return. ILS will then prompt the user with a series of questions as part of the exiting process (see AR Exiting From Add Routing)

To review the patron identification options press 1. or (F) FORWARD to AR Delete Name, or (T) to go to the top discussion

2.1.2.13 Identifying the Patron

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patron be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library card, or entering the equivalent bar code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS

______XAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, ILS will say (THERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or B to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information _______for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the

Page 8

95

11

ş

patron's name. For example, if you had a list like:

1	JONES,	JOHN	В.	
2	JONES,	JOHN	D.	
3	JONES.	JOHN	D.	
4	JONES.	JOHN	۳.	
5	JONES.	JOHN	R.	

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter D2 or D3 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry, enter the index # which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRON:.

PATRON ID ϕ - The Patron ID ϕ is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the wand or type in the patron name whenever possible, thereby minimizing the chance of a typing error.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before any transaction can be recorded into ILS. Local ILS wites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information, putting it into the system at some latar time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON REGISTRATION.

2.1.2.14 AR Delete Mame

TO delete a name from a routing slip, the user must enter D in response to the ILS prompt OPTION:. ILS will then display all the names currently on the list and will ask the user which name is to be deleted. The user may then onter the number corresponding to the name which is to be deleted.

The user must enter a carriage return in response to the ILS prompt when all appropriate names have been deleted. This is the first step of the exiting process (See AR Exiting From Add Routing.)

2.1.2.15 AR List Name

-

List Name is used whenever the user wishes to view all the patrons who are currently on the routing slip. A sample list is shown below.

-

Page 9

11
ADD ROUTING SERIAL TITLE: THE NIN RECORD (\$8) COPY# 1 TENPORARY OPTION:_ 1 MISS JANE BROWN 2 MR GEORGE CAREW 3 MJR BRYAN JONES 4 MS MARY SMITH

NOTE: When the user selects permanent or temporary lists at the beginning of ADD ROUTING, this selection will impact what lists are displayed. If the user wishes to have the other list displayed it will be necessary to enter a C in response to the ILS prompt OPTION:.

2.1.2.16 AR Exit Add Routing

After the user has completed making changes to the routing slip, a return must be entered to begin exiting from ADD ROUTING. At this point ILS will prompt with (F)ILE OR (N)O CHANGE? NOV. The system is set to default to NO CHANGE unless the user types in F. If the user wants to file the changes the correct response is F.Next ILS prompts with (P)PERMANENT/TEMPORARY? TEMPORARY. The system is set to default to TEMPORARY unless the user types IN P. If the user wants this routing slip to be a permanent one P is the correct response.

The user may now exit from ADD ROUTING by using the \prime command. This will take the user to any other activity within ILS. NOTE: if the \prime key is pressed before the changes have been filed away, the changes will be lost.

2.1.3 AR Special Features

USE OF THE - KEY and PERMANENT VS. TEMPORARY LISTS

In ADD ROUTING, the - key is used to return the user to the beginning point of either the item or patron identification stages of ADD ROUTING. This is done to enable the user to start that point over (e.g. spell a name a differnt way) while keeping the user within ADD ROUTING. Pressing the - key will erase just the stage of AR that the user was in the middle of entering (i.e. just the last item or patron information entered.)

ADD ROUTING provides for both permanent and temporary lists. Permanent lists are composed of patrons who wish to receive all issues of a serial title each time they are checked in. Temporary lists are composed of patrons who wish to receive only a particular issue of a serial title; they may (e.g.)wish to read a particular issue which is devoted to an area of their interest. Users must specify which list is to be modified; to change a list choice type C

Page 10

1

٦

••

3 DETAIL

. .

3.1 INTRODUCTION

DETAIL serves as a temporary override to the EXPERIENCE setting by reversing a user's experience level for the current session only. Although experienced users may prefer that ILS not display all the available options, ther users may find the displays helpful. DETAIL permits users to reverse their experience level, for one time only, and gives them more flexibility using ILS.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Detail

2. Step by Step Procedures For Detail

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

3.1.1 DE Overview

DETAIL requires users to choose between the OM and the OFF setting, each of which is explained below.

If you choose ON - ILS will display all options at each point in the session. If a user is an experienced user. (they usually DO NOT have the options displayed for them) choosing OK will mean that ILS WILL DISPLAY all options for the cuttent session. The next time this user uses ILS the options will not be shown.

If you choose OFF - ILS will not display options for each point in the session. If a user is an inexperienced user, (they usually DO have the options displayed for them) choosing OFF will mean that ILS WILL NOT DISPLAY all options for the current session. The next time this user uses ILS the options will be shown.

NOTE: To permanently reverse a user's experience level see EXPERIENCE.

3.1.2 DE Step By Step

To temporarily change experience level the user may enter

JETON OR JETOFF

In response to any ILS prompt. ILS will change the experience level for this session only and return the user to the previous prompt.

It is also possible to change the experience setting in a two step process. The user enters DE in response to the ILS prompt COMMAND: and then enters __either ON or OFF as appropriate.

Page 11

-

48

11

Н

4 EDIT ITEM

..

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The EDIT ITEN procedure permits authorized users to edit or add to cataloging dath in the Master Bibliographic File (MBF).

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of EDIT ITEM
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For EDIT ITEM
- 3. Special Features for EDIT ITEM

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

4.1.1 EI Overview

The EDIT ITEM procedure permits authorized users to edit or add to cataloging data in the Master Bibliographic File (MBF).

The user must identify the item for which the record is to be edited. ILS will then allow the user to add to or delete from the cataloging data. ILS will then file the edited record in the MBF.

For Step By Step Procedures of IDIT ITEM press 'F' and RETURN to go forward.

4.1.2 EI Step By Step

EDIT ITEM should follow this sequence of steps:

1. ITEN IDENTIFICATION Identify the item for which the record is to be edited.

-

- 2. EDIT ITEM RECORD Change or add to the MARC record in the MSF.
- 3. FILE ITEM

File the changed record in the MBF or leave the it unchanged.

-

Page 12

5.1

For more HELP enter the number of the desired option or FORWARD to Special Features:

4.1.2.1 Identify Item

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in ILS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. /CO or /CI). By wanding over a coded version of this same data, ILS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that ILS is prompting the user with IYEM. At this point the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand noves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once ILS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say, "I recognize this item!" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users eithar cannot or do not want to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the IIS Wester Bibliographic File through alternate options. In response to the prompt ITEM, enter ? and a carriage return. IIS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are:

(AGIE: DICE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEN IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER & 'T' AND A RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

1.	IID0=	Item Identification *	6. TK	= Title Key
2.	AU =	luthor	7. AT	* Author Title Key
3.	CA =	Call Number	8. SE	* Serles
4.	IS =	ISSH/ISBK	9. NI	= Message (for item just entered)
5.	LC A=	Library of Congress #		

4.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Number

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the LLS system. The LTD is is the alpha and humaric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID#" in response to the IIS grompt IIIM. IIS will then ask for the IID# and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any inscrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#+0 \$# 1 90 4 in response to the prompt IIEM.

Page 13

•

100

1

-

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM: USER types IID# OR USER replies IID#=0 \$# 1.90 4 ILS esks for the IID# USER enters IID# value

4.1.2.3 Access by Author

••

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU-ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about on entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

4.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world, (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a zange of ______entries beginning with the same call number TLS will display 5 entries at a

Page 14

Н

time on the screen. The user may press 7 to FORWARD or 3 to 30 BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

4.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

. .

٢

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS OR ILS says EMTER THE FULL... USER enters 0700223738 ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS=0700223738

ILS will then search the ISSH/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user way browse through the matches by typing F for FORMARD or B for SACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must typs the ID θ of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID θ .

4.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC 4 the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEN. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FOLD OR PARTIAL LC 4.user must then type in the LC 4. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC+79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt TEEM. ILS will then search the LC 4 index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC 4 was entered there will be only one match: if a pertial LC 4 was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID 4 for that

Page 15

102

entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID Φ .

 SAMPLE:
 ILS prompts ITEM
 ILS prompts ITEM

 USER replies
 DC#
 OR
 USER enters LC=79-123456

 ILS says
 ENTER THE FULL...
 USER enters 79-123456

4.1.2.7 Access by Title Key

.

:

1

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with EXTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3,2,2,1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR,IL,ME,D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORMARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

4.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Kay

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3,2,2,1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME ξ IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4,4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scen through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

and att the survey of

Page 16

.

.

4.1.2.9 Access by Series

.

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEN. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for seriels check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the seriels check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with INTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

4.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

4.1.2.11 EI Edit Item Record

If the user is EDITING data already in the MBF the following sequence may occur.

ILS will prompt:	User should enter:
TAG :	MARC tag number already in the record.
SUBFIELD:	Subfield code already in the record.
REPLACE:	Enter the characters which you wish to delete or replace.
WITH:	Enter the corrected data.

NOTE that ILS will replace the first matching character(s). If the subfield contains the text 'Hedicined' and the user enters 'd' in response to REPLACE the result would be 'He icined'. The user should enter 'med' in response to REPLACE and 'me' in response to WITH. This would result in 'Hedicine'.

The user may add new data to a record in the MBF by following the steps below. If the user enters a tag number or a subfield code that is not currently in ______the record, the following sequence will occur.

. .

Page 17

1

ILS will prompt:	User should enter:
TAG:	MARC tag number (050, 245) Be sure to include leading zeroes
IX:	Marc indicator (two numberical characters) If not appropriate for this tag press RETURN.
SUBFIELD:	Subfield code (a, b, z) This entry MUST be in lowercase letters.
ILS will prompt:	User should enter:
1>	Information to appear in this subfield.

ILS will prompt for second and third appearances of the subfield until user enters RETURN which will cause TAG: to reappear.

The sequences for entering or editing data will repeat until ILS prompts TAG: and the user answers RETURN. Then ILS will move to FILE ITEM.

For more information on FILE ITEM press 'F'.

4.1.2.12 EI File Item

2>

:

If the user has answered a TAG: prompt with RETURN in the EDIT ITEM RECORD step, ILS will move to FILE ITEM and prompt:

The user may type 'F' to file the edited record in the MBF or type 'D' which will leave the original record unchanged in the MBF. (F)ile or (D)on't change /

After the user enters 'f' or 'D' ILS will prompt ITEM: which allows the user to begin the EDIT ITEM process again.

9,1.3 EI Special Features

The - or 'up-errow' has a special use in the EDIT ITEM function.

If the user does not use the wand and barcode label to identify the item. but instead uses a title, author or other search option, a match may not be found in the MBF. The user may enter - and ILS will prompt ITEN: allowing the user to start the EDIT ITEM process again.

Page 18

5 EXPERIENCE

. .

5.1 INTRODUCTION

EXPERIENCE identifies a user as either an experienced or inexperienced user. A user's experience level will determine whether or not all ILS options are displayed on the screen.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Experience

2. Step by Step Procedures For Experience

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

5.1.1 EX Overview

EXPERIENCE records each user's experience level using ILS. It is linked to the user's password and can only be set by the system administrator. There are two EXPERIENCE settings:

1.EXPERIENCE=OFF - This option is for users who are not experienced with ILS. With EXPERIENCE=OFF ILS will automatically list the selection options available at every point in ILS.

2.EXPERIENCE=ON - This option is for users who are experienced with ILS. With EXPERIENCE=ON ILS will not automatically list the selection options available at every point in ILS.

NOTE: Experienced users may still view ILS options at any point by entering a ? followed by a raturn. Should it ever become necessary to temporarily raversa a user's experience level DETAIL can be used.

5.1.2 EX Step By Step

To set a user's experience level the authorized user may enter

/EX=ON OR /EX=OFF

In response to any ILS prompt. ILS will change the experience level and return the user to the previous prompt.

It is also possible to change the experience setting in a two step process. The user enters EX in response to the ILS prompt COMMAND: and then enters either ON or OFF as appropriate.

-

Page 19

6 HELP MAINTENANCE

1 OVERVIEW of HM

1.1 HM - Overview

Help Maintenance is an on-line subsystem for maintaining those documents needed by the library staff in day to day operations. These documents can be created as:

- o Help displays brief ready reference information, available on-line, concerning what to do in some particular situation.
- Manuals in depth information, available on-line or in printed form (depending on how they are set up), for staff education and training.

1.2 HM - Purpose

Many help displays and instruction manuals (like this one) have already been prepared by the ILS systems staff. Some users may not need or want any more. However there are a number of reasons why users may wish to add their own documents or edit existing ones. These include:

- Documenting manual procedures Every automated system interfaces to many local manual procedures. To operate a system correctly a staff member needs ready access to information on both the manual and automated procedures.
- o Documenting library policy A staff member should be able to find out all the library's policies quickly and should see them in their most up-to-date form. An on-line documentation system such as Help Maintenance may be the best way to keep this information available and current.
- o Documenting customized features The ILS is designed for easy customization - at a high level by changing system parameters and tables, and at a low level by modifying the code. Help Maintenence makes it easy to keep all the documentation accurate at each different installation of the ILS.
- o Editing ILS documents The ILS technical writers have tried to make all of their documentation clear, accurate, and easily understandable. However improvements may be possible.

_1.3 HM - Description

The Help Maintenance subsystem is designed to assist the user to perform the following functions:

o Entering texts into the computer's data base.

Page 20

ji

1

-

o Editing those texts.

-

11

- o Linking different blocks of text (called PARAGRAPHS) together to form sequences of text, and changing or rearranging those links.
- o Indexing individual texts or whole sequences.
- o Displaying texts on terminal screens or printing them on the system printer - either individually or in sequences.

Page 21

1

••

-

11

2 BASIC CONCEPTS of HM .

2.1 HH Concepts ~ Paragraph

The basic unit of text in the Help Maintenance subsystem is called a PARAGRAPH.

The ILS paragraph is not necessarily an English paragraph, i.e. a number of sentences of which the first is indented. It may be an English paragraph, or it may be a single word, a sentence, a group of English paragraphs, a list, a table, or even a graphic design.

Its distinguishing feature is that it is always treated as a unit for display or for linkage with other paragraphs.

Everything on this page is one single ILS paragraph (though more than one paragraph can be put on one page).

Page 22

• • •

MC



. •

2.1.1 HM Concepts - Paragraph - 2 - Example

••

screen, or on a printed page.

••

When they're displayed on a CRT, long paragraphs may turn out to be too big to fit on one screen. When that happens, the computer will display 16 lines at a time and then wait. When the operator presses <RETURN> it will display the next 16 lines, and so on until the entire paragraph has come out. Even though the paragraph is displayed in parts, it is still a unit in the sense that we cannot display the middle or end of it without going through the beginning.

If you are writing paragraphs which will be displayed on CRT screens, it may be convenient for the user if each is limited to 16 lines.

There is only one physical limitation on the size of a paragraph, viz. each paragraph must be small enough to fit in the memory of the terminal at which it was created. This is required because each paragraph is composed on the terminal and then transmitted to the computer in one block (Basic Operations ~ Add).

2.1.3 HM Concepts - Paragraph - 6 - Text & Structure

Paragraphs may be thought of as having two components, a TEXT and a STRUCTURE.

The TEXT is the title and all of the words, spaces, symbols, etc. of a paragraph. Everything which is displayed on the screen is the paragraph's text.

The STRUCTURE is all of a paragraph's links with other paragraphs. These links create PATHS of paragraphs or MANUALS for printing out. Paths and manuals are explained below.

2.2 HM PROCEDURES - PATH

Paragraphs may be linked together to form sequences of paragraphs which are displayed or printed in the sequence order. These sequences are called PATHS. A path may contain many paragraphs or only one.

Every path must have a name. That name serves as the entry point to the path in the Help Subsystem. Thus if 'CI' is the name of a path of paragraphs which explain how to check-in a book, typing HE=CJ or /HE=CI will cause the first paragraph of that sequence to be displayed on the screen.

It may be desirable to have more than one term serve as an entry point for a given path. Thus for example someone may need help in checking in books but not know that CI is the exact form of the name of the path which explains that process. To provide these multiple entries we allow SYNONYMS to be created for any path. In the case of CI, synonyms such as CHECKIN, CHECK-IN, CHECK IN, DISCHARGE, and RETURN could be created as alternative entry terms. Any number of synonyms may be created for a given path.

Page 24

1. .

1

1

-

2.2.1 HM Concepts - Paths - 2 - Linkages

The methods used for linking paragraphs together are very simple but extremely flexible. Any particular paragraph may be at the head of a path, the middle of a path, or the end of a path (all of which sounds pretty obvious). However in addition to this, one paragraph may appear in more than one path. It may for example be at the head of one path, be in the middle of two others, and be at the end of a fourth. The same identical paragraph would then be in four different paths.

Furthermore, any path may have branches based on user responses. Thus if a user is reading a persympt on a CRT screen and presses a certain key, he might get a certain new paragraph on the screen. However if he presses a different key he might get a different new paragraph on the screen.

The reason for putting one paragraph into several paths is that it is often desirable to present the same information in two different contexts. A cataloger for example may need to know how to search the bibliographic file and then interpret an OCLC-like display. A reference librarian may need to know how to search the same file and then interpret a reference display. Each needs some of the same information and some different information. Another use might be to provide different amounts of information for different purposes. For example there way need to be a long multiparagraph explanation of something in a manual, and a one or two paragraph extract for help displays.

It would be possible to achieve the above aim by copying one paragraph into two paths, and we can even use the computer to do the work so there need not be any double typing. However if that is done it could happen that one copy would be changed while the other is overlooked - thus leaving two conflicting texts in the system. By providing one single physical paragraph which may be linked into many paths we avoid this problem. Every document in the system is authoritative. Each reflects the most recent update of all the information it contains.

2.2.2 HM Concepts - Paths - 4 - Branch on response

The reason for providing branch-on-response capability within a sequence is that it enables the user to find the specific information he needs without looking at unneeded clutter. There are a number of situations which require this, for example:

- o A staff member calls up a help display and finds that he can't understand it. A branch link might be provided to locate more general background information.
- o A staffer might find his display too general. Different branch points might be provided to enable a use to read at one level of detail and then call up additional details or go on, depending on how much he wants to know about a subject.
 - o A staffer might not know where to look for the information he needs. A help paragraph might be used to present him with multiple options.

Page 25

1

-

. .

It is even possible to use the branching capability to provide programmed instructional manuals. The user build be given some information and then asked a question. His response might then be used by the branching mechanism to move him on or send him back to some previous paragraph.

All of these capabilities - context sensitive displays, documentation authority control, multiple levels of help detail, indirect access to information, and primitive computer assisted instruction, are made possible by the multi-path, branch-on-response paragraph linkage system.

2.3 HM Concepts - Manual

..

A MANUAL is a path specially created for printing out on paper. all of the paragraphs in a manual are stored on-line, just as for any other path, but they are displayed by printing them out. Three characteristics distinguish manuals from paths intended for on-line display:

- Manuals do not permit branching within the sequence of paragraphs. Since a manual is furnished to the user as a printed product rather than an on-line interactive display, there is no opportunity for users to 'respond' to options and change the display sequence. Instead, the paragraphs are printed out in a straight sequence.
- Every paragraph in a manual must have certain print formatting information recorded in its structure. These are explained in the chapter on Operations, section on Linking Paragraphs into Manuals.
- All manual names must have the form 'H#', where '#' is an integer number from 0 to 99, e.g. N4, n76, M0, etc. A maximum of 100 manuals may be dreated.

All of the paragraphs in a manual may also be included in ordinary nonmanual paths or in any number of other manuals. Thus the same information may be made available in many different on-line and printed forms.

2.4 HM Concepts ~ Directory

The DIRECTORY is the list of all help paths available to an on-line user. It is in effect a kind of index to the help system. Adding a path name to the directory accomplishes two things:

 It inserts the name into its correct place in an alphabetical list of path names. When a help user types '*DIR' he can see that list.

 It provides an entry point to the help data base. When a help user enters '*Pathname' he sees the first paragraph in that path.

The name entered in the directory need not be the same one that is used in the pargraph structures. It might be a synonym for some path name (e.g. 'DISCHARGE' for 'CHECK-IN'), or an alternative entry point to a path (e.g. 'CHECK-IN', 'RENEW', 'VERIFY', or etc. as entries into a path called __CIRCULATION'). Thus the directory is the user's entry vocabulary for the Help

Page 26

system.

Paths may be created which is not appear in the directory. Such paths may be used by a writer to issignate one or more paragraphs which appear as common parts of other paths and/or manuals. However if they are not in the linectory they will not appear in the alphabetical list and they may not be entered directly. 3 PROCEDURES of HM

The maintain a bala bout sume MM or 200 to ontir Mo'n four

To maintain a help text type MM or 2MM to enter Help Text Maintenance. From there '?' or the Help key will display all of the available commands.

There are six basic maintenance commands . They are:

Add, Edit, Find, View, Print, and Delete.

Each one may be used on the Directory of paths, the Paragraphs thenselves. or the index of Manuals. To initiate a command type its first latter. The system will then ask for Directory, Paragraphs. or Manuals (D. P. or M). Depending on what the command is, the system may then ask for further information.

If you wish, you may enter several pieces of information at once by typing a space between each piece, e.g.:

A D = to add ε new path to the directory. F P TIST = to find a paragraph with the word 'test' in its title. E M = edit a manual entry point. E M M77 = edit the entry point for manual M77. E P 21 S = edit paragraph 21's structure.

and so on. Each maintanence command will function somewhat differently depending on whether you are working on the Directory, the Paragraphs, or the Manual entries, however the basic principles of each are the same.

The following material explains how to perform each specific function.

3.1 HM Procedures - Paragraph Add

To add a paragraph you must supply the system with a title, text, and two other pieces of information - the 'delete flag' and the 'default up path'.

The 'DELETE FLAG' marks the paragraph as deletable or non-deletable. Nondeletable paragraphs may only be removed by users with a special password which is not included in this manual.

Sometimes a user will need more general information than he is seeing on a screen. To get the presses '*"PP' in order to see previous paragraphs in the path he is examining. However if he reaches the top of that sequence and still wishes more general information a 'DEFNULT UP PATH' is required in order to furnish him with more. The fafault up path may be the name i any path in

Fage 27

1.00

1

-

the directory. '*UP' from the top paragraph of a path will take the user to the top of the default up path, if one exists. A paragraph need only be given a default up path if it is itself the top of some path. Even then the default up path is optional. If none is entered, the Help system will default up to the Help command option list.

"Remember: Adding a paragraph to the database does not by itself make that paragraph accessible to users. It is still necessary to link it to some path or manual in order to enable anyone to see it.

From HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE type 'A P' to add a new paragraph. Then...

DEFAULT UP PATH >

Type any existing path name as the path which the system will switch to if a user enters '/UP' from this paragraph and there is no previous paragraph to go up to. Type RETURN for no default up path.

Can this Paragraph be DELETED (Y/N) >

'Y' enables deletion of this paragraph using the 'D P' command.

'N' protects the paragraph from deletion unless a special password is entered.

TITLE >

• •

Switch to upper/lower case if desired, then enter title of new paragraph.

COPY EXISTING PARAGRAPH (Y/N) N/

'N' or RETURN moves you on to the next step.

'Y' talls the system to copy the test from an existing paragraph. You may then edit that copied text instead of typing in a wholly new one.

COPY FROM PARAGRAPHS >

Type the number of the paragraph which you wish to copy. The system will display its title for confirmation, then initiate editing of that text rather than the add procedure below.

ADDING TEXT - WHEN DONE, PRESS \$2 TO STORE OR \$8 TO EXIT - PRESS 'RETURM' Switch to upper/lower case if desired. Press RETURM and the screen will go blank. Then type in the new paragraph. Use cursor position arrows or insert/delete line/character if desired. To NOT type in column 80 (right margin of the screen) or unwanted blank lines may be created.

When finished, press function key 'f2' to store the modified text or 'f8' to cancel and store a blank paragraph.

3.2 HM Procedures - Adding to the Directory

A new term added to the directory may be the name of an entirely new path, a synchym for an existing path, or an alternative entry point to an existing path (i.e. one that starts the user at some place other than the first paragraph in that existing path). To add a new term, you must furnish the system with the following information:

Page 28

1.5

1

-

the new name, uhether or not this name is deletable, the name of any path for which this is a synonym or an alternative entry point, 'starting' and 'previous' paragraph numbers, definition

The starting paragraph is the one which is first displayed when the user types the new path name. The 'previous' paragraph is the one which the user uill go 'up' to if he enters '*UP' from the starting paragraph. HOWEVER, note that neither '*UP' nor any other transition from one paragraph. HOWEVER, note that neither '*UP' nor any other transition from one paragraph to another will work unless both the starting paragraph and whichever paragraph is previous or next have the new path name and linkages added to their structure (see Linking Paragraphs into Paths). If the new name is only an alternate entry point to an existing path, you need only use the same previous paragraph number already defined for the new 'starting' paragraph in the old path. The existing paragraph structures will continue to work.

It may be wise not to add a term to the directory until after all the work of creating and linking the paragraphs which will be displayed under that term is already finished. Otherwise there is some risk that Help users will find and try to read your new data before it is in a fit state to be seen.

From Help Text Naintenance type 'A D' to add a new term to the directory. Then...

NEW PATH NAME >

.

Type the new term to be entered in the directory. The term must be all upper cars, 10 characters or less in length, and include no spaces. The first character must be alphabetic $(\lambda-Z)$.

You may abbreviate this step by typing 'A D Pathname' from Help Text Maintanance.

SYNONYM FOR PATH >

If this ferm is a synonym for an existing path, type the name of that path. Otherwise press RETURN. If you do enter a path name, no other information is required. The system will insert the new term in the directory, define it as a synonym for the path you have named here, and return you to the top of Help Text Maintenance.

IS PATH DELETABLE (Y/N) >

'Y' enables deletion of this term from the directory using the Delete command.

'N' protects the term from deletion unless a special password is entered.

ALTERMATE INTRY FOR PATH > Enter the name of an existing path if you wish the new term to be an alternative intry point to their path, Otherwise press RETURN.

"SLARTING PARA# >

Enter the number nf the paragraph which you wish to be displayed first when the Help user types this new path name.

PREVIOUS PARA# >

______ If this directory entry is an alternate entry point for an existing path.

Page 29

you may enter the previous para@ which already exists in that path. For example:

Assume that 'ABC' is an existing path and 'NEW' is a new alternative entry point for ABC which you are now adding. Assume that para@ 451 will be the starting paragraph of NEW and that in ABC, para@ 451 has para@ 722 as its previous paragraph.

If you make 722 the previous paras in NEW, then the new directory entry will work with no changes to the structure of paras 951.

If you entering an entirely new path, not an alternative entry point to an existing path, then make the previous paras = 0.

25 CHARACTER DEFINITION >

Enter the definition which you wish to appear alongside the new term in the directory.

SAVE THIS ENTRY (Y/R) >

-

...

'Y' to confirm and return to the top of Help Text Maintenance.

The new path name is now in the directory and may be used by Help users. If this is a new path name (not a synonym or an alternative entry point for an existing path) and if you have not already done so. You should now create any linkages needed to link paragraphs into this path (see Linking Paragraphs into Paths).

3.3 HM Procedures - Adding a New Manual

A menual is a linear sequence of paragraphs linked together and formatted for printing. In order to create one it is necessary to establish the paragraph links (see 'Linking Paragraphs into Manuals') and create an entry point in the list of menuals.

Creating that entry point 'adds' the senual to the system. It enables you to print manuals in just the same way that adding a path name to the Help Directory enables users to acces that path.

To add a manual to the list of wormuals you must give the system:

a manual number title definition starting paragraph number

One manual may be made to include others simply by putting a manual number in instead of a starting paragraph number.

. From Help Text Haintenance type 'A M' to begin adding a new manual.

Then...

MANUALE > Enter the number of the manual which you wish to add. The number must be ______of the form 'MP' where 'P' is an integer number e.g. 'M99'.

. •

Page 30

. 7

.1

You may abbreviate this step by typing 'A M M#' from Help Text Maintenance. TITLE of M# (25 chars max) = / Switch to upper/lower case if desired, then enter the title of the new manual. DEFINITION (25 chars max) = / Enter a brief definition. This definition will NOT be printed when the manual is printed out. It is only for use in Help Text haintenance. STARTING PARA* = Enter the number of the paragraph which you wish to be the first one in the printed manual. You may type a manual number (e.g. ' 15°) instead of a paragraph number. That will cause the entire manual you have referenced to be printed out as the first chapter in the new manual. If you type a manual number the system will respond with: INCLUDE MANUAL MAX (Y/N) Y/ 'Y' or RETURN to confirm. The system will promot again for another STARTING PARA# = / You may enter another manual number, a paragraph number, or RETURN. Another Genual number will cause that Ganwal to be included as chapter 2, and so on until you type a paragraph number or RETURN. If you type RETURM, the system will prompt with: END OF MANUAL M# (Y/M) Y/ 'Y' or RETURN to confirm. SAVE THESE CHANGES (Y/N) Y/ 'Y' or RETURN to confirm. 3.4 HM Procedures - Linking Paragraphs into Paths Linking a paragraph into a path requires several operations. First, you must 'edit' the paragraph structure. This includes identifying: the new path name. the paragraph you wish to be previous to this one in the path. You may specify 'ANY' to mean that all of the following works the same way no matter what paragraph is previous to this one. 'ANY' still allows you to specify specific previous paragraph numbers which will be treated differently Ξ Page 31

••

ł

-.

the user response to move him from the previous paragraph to this one, the next paragraph after this one.

any alternate path, i.e. one which you wish to switch to upon reaching the next paragraph.

the prospt which you wish to be displayed with this peragraph if the user types '?' to find out what the responses mean.

Secondly, you must then edit the structures of the previous and next paragraphs in order to complete the links between them (see 'Edit Paragraphs').

First find the number of the paragraph you wish to link into a path - you can search for it using the F(ind) command and/or verify it using the V(iew) command. Then, from HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE, type 'E P' to begin editing a paragraph.

Then...

PARAGRAPHO >

••

Enter the number of the paragraph you wish to link into a path.

EDIT T(ext) or S(tructure) > Enter 'S' for structure.

You may abbreviate the above steps by typing 'E P \pm S' from HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE, where ' \pm ' is the number of the paragraph you wish to link into the path.

The system will display the paragraph number and its title and then list any paths and manuals which the paragraph currently participates in.

PATH Number or Name > Assuming the path you want to link this paragraph into is not already listed (if it is, see the procedure for 'Editing Paths'), type the new path name.

LINK TO NEW PATH 'Pathname' (Y/N) >'Y' confirms that you wish to link this paragraph to a path to which it is not now linked.

PREVIOUS PARA# >

If the Help user will be coming to this paragraph from another paragraph, enter the number of that paragraph here. If he will be coming here directly by entering a path name (this is the first paragraph in that path), enter '0' - then be sure to create a directory entry for the path with '0' as the 'previous path' and this paragraph's number as the 'starting path' (see Directory Add procedure).

You may enter 'ANY' to mean that the links specified below will work no matter what previous paragraph the user has come from. This still allows you to enter specific previous paragraph numbers later which will then automatically supersede the 'ANY' control for those specific previous paragraph numbers.

RESPONSE >

1

Type the character or character string which the user must enter to move from the previous paragraph to this one. If there is no real previous paragraph (i.e. this is the first paragraph in a new path), then any

_ *i*

Page 32

119

dummy response will do.

FULL REFERENCE ESTABLISHED

NEXT PARA* = /

...

Enter the number of the next paragraph you wish the user to go to after he finishes with this one. If there is no more, enter the number of this paragraph.

SWITCH TO ALTERNATE PATH = /

If you wish the user to leave the path he is in at this point and start a new one beginning with the next paragraph, enter the name of the new path.

PROMPT = /

Enter a character, word, message, or whatever which you wish the Help System to display as a prompt to enable the user to go on to the 'next paragraph' specified above.

SAVE THESE CHANGES (Y/N) >

'Y' to confirm. The system will now ask for any further paragraph linkages you wish to make within this path (remember that one path may have multiple branches in it), or for '-' to return to the top of HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE.

NOTE: If you have linked this paragraph to previous and next paragraphs as part of a sequence, you MUST add this peragraph as a 'next paragraph' in the previous paragraph's structure, and as a 'previous paragraph' in the next paragraph's structure. If this is the first paragraph in a path, you MUST make an entry in the directory if you wish users to be able to directly access it.

3.5 HN Procedures - Linking Paragraphs into Manuals

Linking a paragraph into a manual is much like linking one into an on-line Help path. You identify the paragraph you wish to work on and begin the procedure for linking that paragraph into a path. Then when the system asks for 'PATH Number or Name >', you respond with a name in the form 'N#' where 'f' is an integer number. That tells the system that the 'path' you wish to link to is in fact a manual.

You then furnish the system with linkage and format information including:

previous paragraph#, next paragraph# - the 'next paragraph' may in fact be a whole manual, or a series of manuals, which you wish to be included in the text of this manual after the paragraph you are now on. They will appear as 'sections' of the cnapter you are in, or subsections if you are already at the section level, and so on. Does it start a new page? Does it begin a new chapter, section or subsection?

As with linking paragraphs into paths, you MUST also edit the structure of the previous paragraph to make this one its 'next paragraph', and the next paragraph (if there is one) to make this one its 'previous paragraph'.

τ.

Page 33

.

1

۰_i

It may be difficult to create a manual with a perfect print format on the first try. However once the manual is created it is not difficult to go back back and edit the sequence and format as needed to get a polished looking result.

first find the number of the paragraph which you wish to link into a manual - you can search for it using the F(ind) command and/or verify it using the V(iew) command. Then, from Help Text Maintenance, type 'E P' to begin editing a paragraph.

Then

PARAGRAPH# > Enter the number of the paragraph which you wish to link into a manual.

EDIT T(ext) or S(tructure) > Enter 'S' for structure.

> You may abbreviate the above steps by typing 'E P θ S' from Help Text Maintenance, where ' θ ' is the number of the paragraph you wish to link into the manual.

The system will display the paragraph number and its title and then list any paths and manuals in which the paragraph currently participates.

PATH Number or Name >

Assuming the manual you want to link this paragraph into is not already listed (if it is, see the procedure for 'Editing Manuals'), type the new manual number. The name must be of the form 'M#' (e.g. N77, M2, etc.) where '#' is an integer number.

LINK TO NEW PATH 'M#' (Y/N) > Y' confirms that you wish to link this paragraph to a manual to which it is not now linked.

(MANUAL M#) PREVIOUS PARA# = /

Enter the number of the paragraph which you wish this paragraph to follow. If this will be the first paragraph in the manual, enter 'O

NEW PAGE (Y/N) = / causes the printer to start at the top of a new page when it prints this paragraph.

NEW CHAPTER (Y/N) = 'Y' causes the title of this paragraph to appear as a chapter heading in the table of contents and the text.

NEW SECTION (Y/N) = 'Y' causes the title of this paragraph to appear as a section heading in the table of contents and the text. If the answer to 'NEW CHAPTER' is 'N' then the answer to this question is automatically 'N' and the 'NEW SECTION' prompt will not appear.

1

NEW SUBSECTION (Y/N) = 'Y' causes the title of this paragraph to appear as a subsection heading in the table of contents and the text. If the answer to 'NEW CHAPTER' or

Page 34

11

-

1.21

•• 'NEW SECTION' is 'N' then the answer to this question is automatically 'N' and the 'NEW SUBSECTION' prompt will not appear. NEXT PARAS = Enter the number of the paragraph which you wish to follow this one in the print sequence. If there is no more, press RETURN. You may cause an entire manual to be printed next instead of just another paragraph by typing a manual number in the form 'M®' instead of a paragraph number. The system will then ask: INCLUDE MANUAL M# (Y/N) > Type 'Y' to confirm. The system will then again ask for: NEXT PARA# = You may include more manuals, type a paragraph number, or RETURN as is described above. SAVE THESE CHANCES (Y/N) > to confirm and begin again for any further modifications to the Y 1 structure of this paragraph. NOTE: If you have linked this paragraph to previous and next paragraphs as part of a sequence, you MUST add this paragraph as a 'next paragraph' in the previous paragraph's structure, and as a 'previous paragraph' 1 1 the next paragraph's structure. In order to print the manual, you MUST also add the manual entry point to a list of manuals (see Adding a New Manual). 3.6 HM Procedures ~ Editing Paragraph Text The 'text' of a pargraph is its title and the material displayed on a Help user's screen or in a manual. Editing it is very simple. First find ; the number of the paragraph you wish to link into a path - you can search for it using the F(ind) command and/or verify it using the V(iew) command. Then, from HELP TEXT NAINTENANCE, type 'E P' to begin editing a paragraph. Then. . TITLE = [The title of this paragraph] Switch to upper/lower case if desired and type in any new title. Be sure to type the complete new title, not just the changes. If there are no changes, press RETURN. COPY OTHER PARAGRAPH (Y/N) N/ 'N' or RETURN moves you on to the next step. 'I' tells the system to replace the existing text with text copied from some other paragraph. You may then edit that copied text before saving it. (If you do not save the new text, the old one will still remain.) COPY FROM PARAGRAPH# > -Page 35 1 1.22

Type the number of the paragraph which you wish to copy. The system will display its title for confirmation, then initiate editing of the replacement text.

EDITING TEXT - WHEN DONE, PRESS 12 TO STORE OR 18 TO EXIT - PRESS 'RETURN' Press RETURN and the screen will display the existing text of this paragraph. Switch to upper/lower case if desired and then edit the text. You may add or modify text anywhere on the screen and may use the regular keys plus the cursor position arrows and insert/delete line/character keys. You may also add or edit text 'below' the screen using the roll up/ roll down keys. Do NOT type in column 80 (right margin of the screen) or unwanted blank lines may be created.

When finished, press function key 'f2' to store the modified text or 'f8' to cancel all the changes and keep the original text.

If using upper/lower case, switch back to upper case CAPS LOCK.

3.7 HM Procedures - Editing Paths

To edit a path you must change the structures of the specific paragraphs in that path.

A path is a sequence or linkage of paragraphs but, as explained in the section on HM Concepts ~ Paths - Linkage, the links are stored with the paragraphs rather than in separate chains. To edit a path, e.g. to change the sequence order of paragraphs in that path or to add a new branch on response, it is necessary to change the 'structures' of the specific paragraphs which are involved in the change.

Suppose for example that we have a path which goes through the following paragraphs:

77, 192, 4, 210, 99, 140

Now we want to insert a new paragraph, 166, in the middle to get:

77, 192, 4, 166, 210, 99, 140

We must break the link between 4 and 210 by eliminating 210 as a 'next paragraph' in 4 and eliminating 4 as a 'previous paragraph' in 210. We then add 166 as a next paragraph in 166, 166 as a previous paragraph in 166.

This sounds a little more cumbersome than it actually is since the deletions and additions can be accomplished in a single act of replacing one value with another.

Now consider a path with branches such as:

, i

Page 36

П

-

123

1

• •



Paragraph 192 has three branches (to 4. (56, and 210) and (40 has two entrances (from (66 and 99)).

If we want to add a new sequence in this path to 30 from '92 to 99 to 140. We must add a new response to 192 and a new previous paragraph to 39

Finally, suppose we have two paths:

Path1 - 77,192,4,2:0,99,140

Path2 - 400,179,...(15 more paragraphs).....356.357

and we want to incorporate Path2 in the middle of Path; e.g. between 4 and 210to get:

Pathi - 77, 192, 4, 400, 179, ..., 356, 357, 210, 99, 140.

One way to do this would be to link each paragraph in Path2 into Path1. This would require us to edit twenty-one paragraphs, 4 and 210 from Path1 and all nineteen from Path2.

A more convenient way would be to:

replace 210 with 400 as a next paragraph in 4, replace 4 with 357 as a previous paragraph in 210, add 4 as a previous paragraph in 400, add 210 as a next paragraph in 160 (maybe as a branch on response), and mitch pack paragraph in 160 (maybe as a branch on response).

switch path names from Path! to Fath? when going to 400, switch path names from Path? to Path! when leaving 357.

The Help user would now be able to enter Path1, slip into Path2 without even being aware of it, and return to the rest of Path1 when he is finished. The only 'penalty' (if indeed it is one) is that at the end of Path2 there must be two valid responses, one to quit and one to see the remainder of Path1. If we simply wished to tack Path2 onto the end of Path1, then even this penalty would not exist since the Help user would be quitting at the end of Path2 regardless of where he entered the sequence.

EDIT T(ext) or S(tructure) > Enter 'S' for structure.

You may abbreviate the above steps by typing 'E P θ S' from HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE, where ' ϑ ' is the number of the piragraph you wish to edit.

The system will display the paragraph number and its title and than list any paths and manuals which the paragraph currently participates in.

PATH Number or Name > Enter the number or name of the path you wish to edit. If the one you want is not listed, see the procedure for Linking Paragraphs into Paths.

__PARAGRAPH = DEFAULT UP PATH =

DELETE FLAG =

Paga 37

12-

П

...

```
PATH
                   PPO RESPONSE NPO ALT. PATH MESSAGE/PROMPT
       all of the existing combinations of previous paragraph numbers and
       responses for this paragraph in this path will be listed under the above headings. You may now add to them, change them, or delete one or more
        of them.
 CHANGE DEFAULT UP PATH OR DELETE FLAG (Y/N) N/ 'Y' to change either of these \prime 'N' or RETURN to leave them alone and go
       on.
       If you answered 'Y', then the following will occur.
       DEFRULT UP PATH =
              Enter a new default up path or press RETURN to keep the existing one.
              To delete the existing default up path without entering a new one, type '*K' or '*KILL'.
              Any changes are effective immediately, even if you press '-' (or f2)
              to quit right after changing this data element.
       DELETE FLAG = ['Y' or 'N']
You may change 'Y' (yes, paragraph is deletable) to 'N' (no, not
deletable). If you try to change an 'N' to a 'Y' the system will
              ask for a special password.
            'Any changes to the delete flag are also effective immediately, even if you press '-' (or f2) right after changing the flag.
 PREVIOUS PARA# >
        Enter:
        The number of an existing previous paragraph for which you wish to change
              the response or other information, or for which you wish to add a new
              response, or
        The number of a new previous paragraph in this path, or
        'ANY' - seaning any previous paragraph other than ones specifically named.
        '"KILL(space)PP0' where PP0 is a pravious paragraph you wish to delete
from this path (e.g. '"KILL 423'). The system will then ask:
              DELETE ALL ENTRIES WITH PP = ____ (Y/N) > Enter 'Y' to confirm.
              If you have several responses coming from one PPS and only wish to
delete one of them, do NOT kill the PPS. Kill the specific response
              instead (see below).
              Killing an entry ends the session and returns you to the top of the
               Paragraph Edit Module.
 RESPONSE >
        Enter:
Ξ
                                                                                       Page 38
1
```

12.4

••

÷

An existing response for the previously identified PD# for which you wish to change the next paragraph, or
A new response which you wish to add to the previous paragraph, or
<pre>'*KILL(space)Response' where Response is an existing response which you wish to delete from association with the previously identified PP%. The system will then ask: DELETE RESPONSE '' (Y/N) > Enter 'Y' to confirm.</pre>
Killing a response ends the session and returns you to the top of the Paragraph Edit Hodule.
FULL REFERENCE ESTABLISHED The system now knows what specific previous paragraph#/response pair you are editing.
NEXT PARAN =
Type a new NP# or press RETURN to leave it alone.
If no number is displayed, enter one.
SWITCH TO ALTERNATE PATH * Type any new path name you wish the Help users to switch to upon leaving this paragraph when they have come from the indicated FP# and enter the indicated response. Press RETURN to keep the existing alternate path.
To delete an existing alternate path without replacing it with anything, type '#KILL'.
DIGNET A
The prompt appears when the Help user answers 'CMD>' with '?' in the Help system. It is an explanation of what the above created response does.
Enter a new prompt or press RETURN to keep an existing one.
SAVE THESE CHANGES (Y/N) > 'Y' to confilm.
CONTINUE ADDING AT R(esponses), P(PP#), or - to EXIT > Continue editing or return to the top of the Paragraph Edit Module.
Note: If you modify the structure of one paragraphy e.g. to create a new 'next paragraph' in a particular path, then you may also need to modify
3.8 HM Procedures - Editing Manuals
To edit a manual you must change the structures of the specific paragraphs in thet manual.
-
r ng er 37
11

126

..

A manual is a sequence or linkage of paragraphs but, as explained in the section on HM Concepts - Manuals, the links are stored with the paragraphs rather than in separate chains. To edit a path - e.g. to shange the sequence order of paragraphs, to add or delete a paragraph, or to add or delete a whole sub-manual - it is necessary to change the 'structures' of the specific paragraphs which are involved in the change.

To change the name, definition, or starting paragraph of a manual, edit its entry point (see HM Procedures - Editing Nanual Entry Points).

First find the number of the paragraph whose structure you wish to edit — you can search for it using the F(ind) command and/or verify it using the V(iew) command. Then, from Help Text Maintenance, type 'E P' to begin editing a paragraph.

Then...

PARAGRAPH# > Enter the number of the paragraph which you wish to edit. EDIT T(ext) or S(tructure) > Enter 'S' for structure. You may abbreviate the above steps by typing 'S P ϕ S' from Help Text Maintenance, where ' ϕ ' is the number of the paragraph you wish to edit. The system will display the paragraph number and its title and then list any paths and manuals which the paragraph currently participates in. PATH Number or Name > Enter the display number or the manual number (in the form 'N#') of the manual which you wish to edit. (MANUAL MO) PREVIOUS PARAS = Enter the number of the paragra h which you wish this paragraph to follow. or type RETURN to accept the existing number. If this will be the first paragraph in the manual, enter '0'. NEW PAGE (Y/N) = Type 'Y' or 'N' or RETURN to accept the existing value. 'Y' causes the printer to start at the top of a new page when it prints this paragraph. NEW CHAPTER (Y/N) = $_$ / Type 'Y' or 'N' or RETURN to accept the existing value. 'Y' causes the title of this paragraph to appear as a chapter heading in the table of contents and the text. NEW SECTION (Y/N) = _/ Type 'Y' or 'N' or RETURN to accross the existing value. 'Y' causes the title of this para, with to appear as a section heading in the table of contents and the text. If the answer to 'NEW CHAPTER' is -Page 40

⊷• . · ·

..

'N' then the answer to this question is automatically 'N' and the 'NEW SECTION' prompt will not appear.

NEW SUBSECTION (Y/N) = -----

Type 'Y' or 'N' or RETURN to accept the existing value.

'Y' causes the title of this paragraph to appear as a subsection heading In the table of contents and the text. If the answer to 'NEW CHAPTER' or 'NEW SECTION' is 'N' then the answer to this question is automatically 'N' and the 'NEW SUBSECTION' prompt will not appear.

NEXT PARAS = ____/ You may replace the existing value by typing a new one. The new one will then be the next paragraph to follow this one in the print sequence.

To accept the existing value, type RETURN.

Yo delete the whole entry and not replace it (because this may be the last paragraph in the manual), type '*K' or '*KILL'.

You may cause an entire manual to be printed next instead of just another paragraph by typing a manual number in the form 'M\$' instead of a paragraph numler. The system will then ask:

INCLUDE MANUAL M& (Y/H) > Type 'Y' to confirm. The system will then again ask for:

NEXT PARAS = You may include more manuals, type a paragraph number, ""K' or RETURN as is described above.

SAVE THESE CHANGES (Y/N) Y/

'Y' or RETURN to confirm and begin again for any further modifications to the structure of this paragraph.

NOTE: If you have changed the 'previous' or 'next' paragraphs of this Nois: If you have changed the previous of next paragraphs of this manual sequence, you MUST also make this paragraph a 'next paragraph' in the previous paragraph's structure, and a 'previous paragraph' in the next paragraph's structure. In order to print the manual, there MUST also be a manual entry point for it (see Adding a New Manual).

3.9 Hit Procedures - Editing the Directory

Any term in the directory may be modified or deleted.

To delete a term from the directory it is only necessary to supp ' its hase with a delete command.

To modify one you must go through a procedure very like the one for adding to the directory.

To delete a deletable term from the directory type 'D D'. Then..

____PATHname >

Page 41

1

-

... Type the name of the path you wish to delets from the Help Directory. You may abbreviate this step by typing 'D D Pathname' from HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE. DELETE PATH 'Pathname' FROM THE HELP DIRECTOR! ARE YOU SURE (Y/N) > to confirm. The system will flash 'DELETED HH' and return you to i y i the top of Help Text Maintenance Terms which are defined as non-deletable in the directory may also be deleted, but only with a special password. To modify the characteristics of a term in the directory.... From HELP TEXT MAINTENANCE type 'E D' to begin editing the directory. Then. PATHname > Type the name of the path you wish to edit. You may abbreviate this step by typing 'E D Pathname' from HELP TEXT MAINTERANCE. EDITING PATH = _ SYNONYM FOR PATH = 1 To make this term a synonym for some other path, enter the name of that path. To delete an existing synonymous relationship type '*K'. To do nothing, press RETURN. If you create a synonym, no other information is required. The system will update the directory and return you to the top of Help Text Maintenance. DELETE FLAG = 'Y' enables deletion of this term from the directory. 'N' protects the term from inadvertent deletion. RETURN leaves the existing value of the flag unchanged. ALTERNATE ENTRY FOR PATH = To make this term an alternative entry point for a path, add the alternate path's name or replace the existing alternate path name. To delete an existing alternate path entry type '#K'. RETURN leaves the existing siluation unchanged. STARTING PARAS * Enter a new starting paragraph number or RETURN to leave the existing one unchanged. -Page 42 1

124

ŧ.

unchanged. NOTE: Be sure that this is a valid previous paragraph number under this path name (or the alternate path name if this is an alternate entry point) in the 'starting' paragraph's structure. 25 CHARACTER DEFINITION * _ 5 H28 Enter a new definition of this directory term or RETURN to leave the existing one. The system will now display the complete specifications for this directory entry and ask. SAVE THIS ENTRY (Y/N) > Y' to confirm and return to the Top of Help Text Maintenance. 3.10 - 4M Procedures - Editing Sanual Entry Points Editing a manual entry point is exactly like adding one. The only difference is that you are replacing existing values instead of adding new cnes. from Help Text Maintenance type 'E h' to begin editing a wanual entry point. Then... ANULLS > . Enter the number of the manual which you wish to edit. The number must be of the form 'H#' where '#' is an integer number e.g. 'M99'. You may abbreviate this step by typing '5 M M#' from Help Text Maintenance. TITLE of M& (25 chars max) = _ Switch to upper/lower case if desired, then retype the title if you wish to replace the old one. Otherwise press RETURN. DEFINITION (25 chars max) = Retype the definition if you wish to replace the old one. Otherwise press REFURN. This definition will NOT be plinted when the manual is printed out. It is only for use in Help Text Maintenance. STERTING PARAS ... The number of any paragraph which you wish to be the first one in the printed manual, or press RETURN to accept the existing starting paragraph You may type a manual number (e.g. (MS^{+}) instead of a paragraph number. That will cause the entire manual you have referenced to be printed out as the first chapter in the new manual. If you type a nanual number, or Fade 43

1

. .

```
••
       accept one which already exists, the system will respond with:
       INCLUDE MANUAL MAX (Y/N) Y/
              'Y' or RETURN to confirm.
             The system will prompt again for another
             STARTING PARA® = ____ / You may enter another manual number, a paragraph number, or
                   RETURN.
                   Another manual number will cause that manual to be included as
                   chapter 2, and so on until you type or accept a paragraph number
                   OF RETURN.
                   If you type RETURN, the system will prompt with:
                   END OF MANUAL HO (Y/N) Y/
                          'Y' or RETURN to confirm.
 SAVE THESE CHANGES (Y/N) Y/
        'Y' or RETURN to confirm and return to the top of Help Text Maintenance.
 3.11 HM - Procedures - Utilities
       Help Text Maintenance provides a number of utility programs which assist
 the library administrator in maintaining the Help database. These programs
 enable a user to:
       Find data on the basis of partial information.
       View data.
       Print data,
       Delete data.
 3.11.1 HM - Procedures - FIND Utility
       FIND is a utility command for finding a character string in a directory
 entry, manual title, or paragraph title. It is especially useful for finding the number of a manual or paragraph of which all you know is the tilte or a
 part of the title.
       To find a character string, from Help Text Maintenance type 'F D', 'F P'.
 or 'f M' (D=Directory, P=Paragraph, M=Manual).
       Then...
 CHARACTER STRING TO FIND >
       Type in any characters or words you wish to search for. They must be in the same exact order as in the titles you are searching, e.g. 'hm = p' will retrieve 'SM = Purpose' and all of the 'SM = Procedures...'. It
-
                                                                              Page 44
1
```

131

Ť

- --- -

Hould not retrieve a title called 'HM Purpose' because that title does not include the dash or the extra space between the two words 'Jpper/lower case distinctions are ignored. 'TEST' will retrieve 'TEST'. 'Test' and 'test' equally well. You may abbreviate the above step by typing 'F D String', 'F P String' or 'F M String' directly from Help Text Maintenence. If you are searching for a paragraph the system will display: paragraph number title If you are searching for a manual the system will display: manual number title definition starting paragraph number If you are searching the directory the system will display: pith name the term for which this term is a synonym (if there is one) delete flag alternate path (if there is one) previous paragraph number starting paragraph number definition 3.11.2 HM - Procedures - VIEW Utility VIEW is a utility command for looking at directory entries, paragraphs or manuals. It is especially useful for confirming that you have the right path name, manual or paragraph before editing or deleting it. To view a DIRECTORY entry, from Help Text Maintenance type 'V D'. Then.. VIEW DIRECTORY FROM > Enter any path name or character string. The system will display the first five directory entries alphabetically following the name or string you entered. The elements displayed are: antry term ~ a path name or synonym path for which this term is a synonym (if any) delete flag alternate path (if any) previous paragraph number starting paragraph number definition You may abbreviate this step by typing 'V D String' from Help Text Maintenance. -~ Page 45 1

...

-

132

18.
To view a PARAGRAPH, from Help Text Naintenance type 'V P'. Then PARAGRAPH# > Enter the number of the paragraph to view. it is in. If viewing the structure of a paragraph, the system will respond with: PARA#: [P#]. - [Title] PATHS: 1. ____ 2. ___ etc. PATH Number or Name > Enter the number from the above list, or the name of a path or manual number of a manual. You may abbreviate the above steps by typing 'V P P\$ T' or 'V P P\$ S Pathname' from Help Text Maintenance. The system will display the exact same information as would be seen in editing paragraph text or structure except that editing is not initiated. _ To view a MANUAL title, from Help Text Maintenance type 'V M'. Then. VIEW MANUAL TITLES FROM > first five manual title or character string. The system will display the first five manual titles alphabetically following the title or string you entered. The displayed elements are: title manual number definition starting paragraph number You may abbreviate this step by typing 'V M String' from Help Text Maintenance. 3.11.3 HM - Procedures - DELETE Utility DELETE is a utility command for weeding the Help database. It can be used to delete a whole paragraph (both text and structure), a directory entry, or a manual entry point. When deleting the latter two, the system does NOT delete __any paths or manuals from paragraph structures (see procedures for editing paths and manuals). The form of all deletes is the same. From Help Text Maintenance type 'D D', 'D P' or 'D M'. _Then... Page 46 1

••

133

ł

i . One of the following prompts will appear.

- •

-

PATHname >
pARAGRAPHE >
pARAGRAPHE >
mANUALE >
 Enter the directory entry term, the paragraph number, or the manual number
 for the item to be deleted.
 You may abbreviate this step by typing 'D D Pathname'. 'D P P&' or
 'D M M*' from Help Text Maintenance.

DELETE [PATH 'Pathname' FROM THE DIRECTORY]
 [PARAGRAPH P4 - 'Title of the paragraph']
 [ENTRY FOR MANUAL M# - 'Title of the manual']

ARE YOU SURF (Y/N) >
 The system first repeats what you have asked it to do. displaying some
 information to enable you to be sure that you are delating what you want
 to delate.

Type 'Y' to confirm.

DELETEDIII
 The system donfirms that it has deleted the item.
 Note: If an item you are attempting to delete has been previously defined
 as non-deletable, the system will not delete it without a special
 password.

ł

Page 47

j

7 ITEM DELETE

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The ITEM DELETE procedure permits authorized users to permanently remove bibliographic records from the Naster Bibliographic File (MBF) and from the activity record associated with each item.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Item Delete

2. Step by Step Procedures For Item Delete

3. Special Features for Item Delete

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

7.1.1 ID Overview

ITEM DELETE is used when weeding an item or removing the record of a lost item. Authorized users can permanently remove bibliographic records from the Master Bibliographic File (MBF) and from the activity record associated with each item.

The user must first identify the item for which the record is to be deleted. The user can then delete a specific Volume. Issue. Part, Supplement or Copy. If the library owns only one copy of the item, the user can remove it entitely from the HBF.

For step by step procedures of ITEM DELETE go FORWARD.

For a discussion of SPECIAL FEATURES of ITEN DELETE press 'F' and RETURN thice.

7.1.2 ID Step By Step

ITEM DELETE will follow these steps:

 ITEM ID - Identify the item to be deleted.
 DELETE RECORD - Delete a specific Volume, Issue, Part. Supplement (VIPS) or copy of an item from the activity record or delete the entire record from the NBF.

. *

Page 48

11

-;

136

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID# is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

7.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Number

1.	IID#=	Item Identification #	6. TK	= Title Key
2.	AU =	Author	7. AT	= Author/Title Key
3.	Cl #	Call Number	8. SE	Series
4.	IS =	ISSN/ISBN	9. MI	= Message (for item just entered)
5.	LC ##	Library of Congress 🕈		

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONE READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER & 'T' AND & RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT A BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not went to use the barcode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the ILS Master Bibliographic File through alternate options. In response to the prompt TTEM, enter ? and a circiage return. ILS will display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short massages to an item record. They are:

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in IIS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. <00 or <01). By wanding over a coded version of this same data, IIS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that IIS is prompting the user with ITEM. At this point the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once IIS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say, "I recognize this item!" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

7.1.2.1 Identify Item

For more HELP enter the number of the desired option or FORWARD to SPECIAL FEATURES:

. .

entering IID#=0 ## 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM:		ILS prompts ITEM:				
	USER types IID®	OR	USER replies IID#=0	5 8	1	90	ų,
	ILS asks for the IID*						
	USER enters IID\$ value						

7.1.2.3 Access by Author

...

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this stem, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

7.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world, (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS

. 1

Page 50

1

137

prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number TLS will display 3 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to go BACKWARDS through the list. To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

7.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

...

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM		ILS prompts ITEM
	USER replies IS	OR	USER replies IS=0700223738
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL.		
	USER enters 0700223738		

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID 4 of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID 4.

7.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC # the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC #.user sust then type in the LC #. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC=79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC # index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC # was entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC # was entered there may

1

A State of the Sta

Page 51

11

131

be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to SACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID # for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID #.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM	ILS prompts ITEM		
	USER replies LC#	OR	JSER enters	LC=79-123456
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL			
	USER enters 79-123456			

7.1.2.7 Access by Title Key

. .

Title access in the IIS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3,2.2,1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the forth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3,2,2,1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR.IL.ME.D. ILS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing F for FORMARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

7.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3,2,2,1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER 1ST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST HAME 6 1ST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORMARD and B for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

Page 52

. '

1

Ξ

7 1.2.9 Access by Series

.

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORMARD or B for BACKUP.

7.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately efter a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

7.1.2.11 ID Dalete Record

ILS will display the title of the item to be deleted. If there are Volumes, Issues, Parts, Supplements (VIPS) or Copies of the item ILS will prompt for the specific item to be deleted. For example:

```
ILS will display:
                                         User enters:
 Diseases of the eye.
 VOLUME :
                                         Number of the volume to be removed from the
                                          collection.
 O R
 Journal of Radiology
                                         Last two numbers of the year of the issue.
 YEAR:
 M0 :
                                          Number of the month (Jan=1, Febetc.).
 DAY:
                                          Date of the issue.
 If the YEAR/MO/DAY prompts fail to identify the specific item, ILS will display
a list of items which match. When the specific item has been positively
 identified
-
```

Page 53

'1

· • • č

 ILS will prompt:
 User enters:

 ARE YOU SURE? NO/
 RETURN to cancel the transaction or 'Y' to DELETE.

 NO REMAINING VIPS OR COPIES,
 RETURN to delete only the activity record or 'Y' to remove the item from the "DF entire".

 ILS will then prompt for ITEM: and you may delete another record
 7.1.3

 ID Special Features
 ITEM DELETE will remove records from the "Ester Biblioptart". For entire in the intervence inter

...

-

7

MASTER BIBLIOGRAPHIC FILE	This file contains the four MAGT report for each fiem whet hy the cap
/ I ******	This record contains into that, norm a
* ACTIVITY * ACTIVITY * ACTIVITY *	specific volume issue cook ato
* RECORD 1 * RECORD 2 * RECORD 3 *	An addivity record will exist for each
*********************************	copy of every item in the library

The Haster Bibliographic File contains the bibliographic data lin the form of a MARC record) for every item in the collection. The Activity Pecori is the record of each physical copy of the item

Page 34

1.0

8 ITEM STATUS

8.1 INTRODUCTION

ITEM STATUS permits authorized users to view the status of any copy of any title in the LS collection. It will specifically tall users whether the item is (e.g.) available for circulation, or if it is alleged to be lost, missing or otherwise unavailable.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Item Status
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Item Status
- 3. Special Features for Item Status

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

S.T.1 IS Overview

ITEM STATUS includes the following information:

- 1. Title of the item
- 2. Author of the item
- 3. Call number
- 4. ISBN/ISSN number
- Number of times the item has been checked out, or used in-house
- 6. Current status of the item
- 7. Status of other copies of the item, if desired.

8.1.2 IS Step By Step

ITEM STATUS requires the user to:

1.	IDENTIFY THE ITEM	
	Search ILS for the desired item	
2.	PRINT STATUS OF ITEM	
	Find the correct copy of the ite	m

and	print 3	. t.s	status.

Page 55

-^-

1

Ξ

H

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID#" in response to the IIS prompt ITEM. IIS will then ask for the IID# and the user should enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered exactly as they appear. Any discrepancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a

Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION MUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID® is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar _code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

8.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Number

1.	IID\$*	Item Identification #	6. TK	* Title Key
2.	λU ≈	Author	7. AT	= Author/Title Key
3.	CA =	Call Number	8. SE	* Series
4.	IS *	ISSN/ISBN	9. MI	* Message (for item just entered)
5.	LC #=	Library of Congress #		

(NOTE: ONCE YOU'RE DONF READING AN ITEM IDENTIFICATION OPTION ENTER A 'T' AND A RETURN TO GET BACK TO THIS DISCUSSION!)

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITHOUT & BARCODE SCANNER It is sometimes the case that users either cannot or do not want to use the bercode wand. Under these circumstances users may instead access the ILS Master Bibliographic File through alternate options. In response to the prompt ITEM, enter ? and a carriage return. ILS Hill display 8 access options and an additional option which affixes short messages to an item record. They are

IDENTIFYING ITEMS WITH THE BARCODE SCANNER The barcode scanner is the fastest way to complete any transaction in ILS. Using the barcode wand eliminates the need for having to type in lengthy patron data, item data and the transaction symbols (e.g. CO or /CI). By wanding over a coded version of this same data. ILS users will not experience the problems associated with miskeying this important information. To identify an item using the barcode scanner, the user must first be sure that ILS is prompting the user with ITEM. At this point the user must put the point of the wand on the barcode label, and move the point of the wand over the pattern of black vertical lines. It does not matter if the wand moves from the left to right side or vice versa. Sometimes it helps if the wand is held directly over the item, instead of at a slant the way one would hold a pen. It is not necessary to scratch the barcode label. A little smooth stroke is all that is needed. Once ILS has recognized the item, it will respond by beeping once. This is to say, "I recognize this item!" After a little practice with the wand users will feel more comfortable using it.

8.1.2.1 Identify Item

...

For more HELP concerning either of thes, steps enter the number of that step and press RETURN.

Page 56

÷.

÷

ł

ł

wtong matin or no maton. The user may combine these steps into one step by antering IID#=3. \$# ' 30 4 in response to the prompt ITEM

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM: USER types IID# OR USER replies IID#=0 \$# 1.90.4 ILS asks for the IID# USER enters IID# value

B.1.2.3 Access by Author

...

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AUXANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or 3 to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about in entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item, to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or guit entirely.

8.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular may of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world, (Deuey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more ranown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL NUMBER. Then _______the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wishes to

Page 57

144

combine these two steps the user may enter CA=QA76.15 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen.The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to go BACKWARDS through the list.To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

8.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrieve and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SAMPLE:	ILS prompts ITEM	
	USER replies IS	OR
	ILS says ENTER THE FULL	
	USER enters 0700223738	

ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS=0700223738

.

:

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say IHERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID θ of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID θ .

8.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and _3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC 0 the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC 0.user must then type in the LC 0. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC *79-123456 in response to the ILS prompt TEM. ILS will then ______search the LC 0 index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire LC 0 was

. '

Page 58

175

11

••

entered there will be only one match: if a partial 10 \pm was entered there may be several matches: The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and 5 to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID \pm for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's ID \pm .

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM ILS prompts ITEM USER replies LC# OR USER enters LC=79+123456 ILS says ENTER THE FULL. USER enters 79-123456

8.1.2.7 Access by Title Kay

.

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3.2.2.1 is used to match the first 2 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the IIS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER THE TITLE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter commas consecutively to fill in the key.) These 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR.II.ME.D. IIS will reply by searching for and displaying all entries which match the search key. If there are more than 5 matches the system will say THERE'S MORE and the user may prove through the entries by typing f for FORWARD or 3 for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID \$.

8.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4.4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3.2.2.1 title key.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the 115 prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME 1 IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IN FORMAT 4.4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT+ALLA.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are more than 5 entries ILS will say TMERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and B for BICKWARD. To be sure that an entry is for the correct record the view any press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

-

2age 39

11

8.1.2.9 Access by Series

...

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promi TTEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SE command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a /SE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

8.1.2.10 Message (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an item in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short message to be entered.

8.1.2.11 IS Print Status

Printing out an item's status may involve several staps, depending upon the circumstances of the particular item. In cases where there are multiple copies or volumes/issues/parts/supplements ILS will prompt the user for the exact data needed to identify the desired item.

EXAMPLE: a user willes to display the status of a serial, "North American". After having identified this title ILS will prompt for:

VOLUME: The user may enter 1. If there exists more than one copy ILS will prompt for:

COPY#: If the user is unsure which copy is the right one, pressing ? and a return (or the f1 key) will cause the the status of all copies to be displayed as follows:

INDEX	COPY	STATUS
1	1	CO DUE 06/13/80
2	2	AVAILABLE
3	3	AVAILABLE
4	5	AVAILABLE
-		

Page 50

. .

11

147

ī.

If the user desires to learn more information about any particular copy, entering the appropriate index number will cause ILS to display a more detailed record of the item's status:

ID: 0 \$ \$\$ CALL\$: TL686.N6S9 ISBN&: 0668033185 TITLE: NORTH AMERICAN AUTHOR: SWANBOROUGH, FREDERICK GORDON CHECKED OUT IN THIS PERIOD: 1 INTERNAL USAGE: 0 STATUS.... AVAILABLE STATUS OF OTHER COPIES? YES/

NOTE: In this display the copy ϑ is not included. ILS assumes the user knows the copy number since it was just displayed in conjunction with the index ϑ . To get back to the prompt ITEN: enter a return in response to the ILS prompt HIT RETURN TO CONTINUE>.

8.1.2.12 IS Special Features

· •

Ξ

As of June 16, 1980 there are no known special features for ITEM STATUS.

-

Page 61

9 NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM

9.1 INTRODUCTION

NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM permits authorized users to enter cataloging data into the Master Bibliographic File (MBF). It enables catalogers to edit and transfer records from the ILS Tape Files (work spaces) into the MBF It also permits catalogers to enter original data directly into the MBF.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Newly Cataloged Item

2. Step by Step Procedures For Newly Cataloged Item

3. Special Features for Newly Cataloged Item

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

9.1.1 NE Overview

NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM permits authorized users to enter cataloging data into the Master Bibliographic File (MBF).

If a book is new or has circulated with a temporary ID, NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM will search the MBF and the Tape File for a record of the item. This search will start when the user enters either the title or the call number. If the Tape File contains a MARC record for the item, the user may edit or add to the record and produce a permanent barcode label for the item. If the MBF contains a MARC record for the item the user may enter a Copy 2 (or 3. etc.) and produce a barcode label.

For a step by step discussion of NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM press 'F'.

9.1.2 NE Step By Step

When entering a NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM. ILS will ask:

PRINT SARCODE (Y or N): Y/ If you press the RETURN key the system will produce a barcode label at the conclusion of the transaction. If you type 'N' and then RETURN the system will not produce the label.

. •

Page 52

'1

-

ILS will display:

TEMPORARY ITEM ID: If you have assigned a temporary item ID number, enter it now. When you have entered the full record into the Master Bibliographic File it will be removed from the Temporary File.

NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM should follow this sequence of steps:

- SEARCH FOR THE ITEM Search the Master Bibliographic File (MBF) and the Tape File
- 2. ITEM FOUND OR NOT
 - View any items found in the MBF or Tape File
- SDIT RECORD
 Add to, change or create a MARC record
- 4. ENTER BARCODE DATA Supply information that will be encoded on the Barcode Label

For more HELP enter the number of the desired option or FORWARD to Special Features:

9.1.2.1 SEARCH FOR ITEM

ILS will display: TITLE:

TITLE: Enter title from title page. ILS will search the MBF and the Tape File for cataloging data already in the system.

OR

Press RETURN and ILS will display:

CALL 6: Enter call number. ILS will search the MBF and the Tape File for cataloging data already in the system.

OR

Press RETURN again. You may now create a new cataloging entry in the MEF. In response to the ILS prompt TAG: For more information on this feature press 'F' and a RETURN twice to view EDIT RECORD.

9.1.2.2 NE Item Found Or Not

In response to a TITLE or CALL # search ILS will display one of four messages.

1. THERE ARE ENTRIES IN BOTH THE MASTER FILE AND THE TAPE FILE Which match (your entry)

Page 53

- -

150

Н

Ξ

2. THERE ARE ENTRIES ONLY IN THE TAPE FILE WHICH MATCH (your entry)

3. THERE ARE ENTRIES ONLY IN THE MASTER FILE WHICH MATCH (your entry)

4. NO ENTRIES IN EITHER MASTER FILE OR TAPES MATCH (your entry)

For HELP with any of these, enter the number of the step and press RETURN. For information on EDIT RECORD enter 'F'.

9.1.2.3 NE Item In NBF And Tape File

If a search in the MBF and Tape File yields hits in both places, ILS will reply:

THERE ARE ENTRIES IN BOTH THE MASTER FILE AND THE TAPE FILE WHICH MATCH [your entry]

MASTER FILE MATCHES

ILS will then display 5 entries at a time.

IF YOU FIND & MATCH - Enter the index # and ILS will prompt IN THE MBF you to ENTER BARCODE DATA. IF YOU DO NOT FIND - Enter - or '/None' A MATCH IN THE MBF

ILS will display:

TAPE FILE MATCHES

ILS will then display 5 entries at a time.

IF YOU DO NOT FIND A - Enter - or '/None' and ILS will prompt MATCH IN THE TAPE FILE CALL #: and you may search by call number. IF YOU FIND A MATCH - ILS will display the MARC record and IN THE TAPE FILE prompt TAG: This is the EDIT RECORD step of NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM.

For more information on EDIT RECORD press 'G'.

for more information on ENTER BARCODE DATA press 'G' and RETURN and then press 'F' and RETURN.

-

...

Page 64

151

11

ļ

٦.

```
. .
 9.1.2.4 NE Item In Tape File
 If a search in the MBF and Tape File yields hits only in the Tape File
 ILS will reply:
 THERE ARE ENTRIES ONLY IN THE TAPE FILE WHICH MATCH (your entry)
 TAPE FILE MATCHES
             ILS will then display 5 entries at a time.
             IF YOU DO NOT FIND A - Enter ~ or '/None' and ILS will prompt
MATCH IN THE TAPE FILE CALL 0: and you may search by call number.
             IF YOU FIND A MATCH - ILS will display the MARC record and
IN THE TAPE FILE prompt TAG: This is the EDIT PECORD step
                                          of NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM.
 For more information on EDIT RECORD press 'G'.
 3.1.2.5 NE Item In MBF
 If a search in the HBF and Tape File yields hits only in the MBF
 ILS will reply:
 THERE ARE ENTRIES ONLY IN THE MASTER FILE WHICH MATCH [your entry]
 MASTER FILE MATCHES
             ILS will then display 5 entries at a time.
             IF YOU FIND A MATCH - Enter the index # and ILS will prompt
              IN THE MBE
                                      you to ENTER BARCODE DATA.
             IF YOU DO NOT FIND - Enter ~ or '/None' and ILS will prompt
A MATCH IN THE HBF CALL #: and you may search by call number.
 for more information on ENTER BARCODE DATA press 'G'.
 9.1.2.5 NE Items In Neither File
 ILS will display:
        NO ENTRIES IN EITHER THE MASTER FILE OR TAPES MATCH (your entry)
  ILS will automatically put you in EDIT RECORD mode allowing you to enter
_data directly into the MBF.
                                                                            Page 65
```

il

SS4

For more information on the EDIT RECORD step of NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM press the 'G'.

9.1.2.7 NE Edit Record

...

EDIT RECORD allows the user to enter new data into the MBF or to edit records already in the MBF or Tape File.

ILS will prompt:	User enters:
TJG:	MARC tag number (050, 245) Be sure to include leading zeroes.
: KI	MARC indicator (two characters) If not appropriate for this tag press RETURN
SUBFIELD:	Subfield code (a, b, z) This entry MUST be in lowercase letters.

ILS will prompt: User enters: 1> Information to appear in the subfield. 2> ILS will prompt for second and third appearances of the subfield until user enters RETURN which will cause TAG: to reappear.

If the user is EDITING data already in the MBF or Tape File, the following sequence may occur.

ILS will prompt:	User should enter:
TAG:	MARC tag number already in the record.
SUBFIELD:	Subfield code already in the record.
ILS will prompt:	User enters:
REPLACE:	Enter the characters which you wish to delete or replace.

WITH: Enter the corrected data.

NOTE that ILS will replace the first matching character(s). If the subfield contains the text 'Medicined' and the user enters 'd' in response to REPLACE the result would be 'Medicined'. The user should enter 'ned' in response to REPLACE and 'ne' in response to WITH. This would result in 'Medicine'.

The sequences for entering or editing data will repeat until ILS prompts TAG: and the user answers RETURN. Then ILS will move to ENTER BARCODE DATA.

. 1

Page 56

Л

-

-

. . 5

For more information on ENTER BARCODE DATA press 'F'.

9.1.2.8 NE Enter Barcode Data

This final step of NEWLY CATALOGED ITEMS will prompt the user for information to be coded onto the barcode label for the item.

ILS will prompt: User enters: 'L' for Law or press RETURN for General LAW OR JENERAL: G/ (other options may appear in this position. Its purpose is to assign items to special collections if desized.) 'S' for serials or press RETURN for monographs. MONO OR SERIAL: M/ Enter a number designated by your library to specify type or press RETURM to skip this option. Type:/ Enter a valid loan period for your library - 2 weeks. LOAN PERIOD: 4 weeks, atc. ILS will prompt: User enters: VIPS? N/ Press RETURN to skip this option. If you enter 'Y' ILS will display: VOLUME: Volume number. ISSUE: Issue number. PART: Part number. SUPPLEMENT Supplement name or number.

COPY #: A number MUST be entered here.

Press RETURN and the item will be entered into the Master Bibliographic File. ILS will prompt TITLE: and you will be at step one, SEARCH FOR ITEM.

9.1.3 NE Special Features

A SPECIAL FEATURE of NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM is the use of - or 'up-arrow'.

1. In the SEARCH FOR ITEM step - When ILS prompts CALL 4: and the user wants to search by title, pressing the - Key will cause ILS to prompt TITLE: The user may then search by title.

AND

If ILS finds matches in the MBF and the Tape File it will display the matches of the MB7 first. If the user enters ~ ILS will display the Tape File matches.

t

1

Page 67

14 -

2. In any other step -

...

-

-

The - key will take the user back to the previous step. This allows the user to 'start over'.

Page 68

10 PATRON ACTIVITY

10.1 INTRODUCTION

PATRON ACTIVITY permits authorized users to view information about any patron's library activity. Information available includes items currently checked out, items on reserve, messages associated with the patron, and total number of items ever borrowed by the patron.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Patron Activity
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Patron Activity
- 3. Special Features for Patron Activity

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

10.1.1 PA Overview

PATRON ACTIVITY permits authorized users to view the following items on a patron's record:

- o items currently chacked out and due dates
- o title of any reserves being held for the patron
- o amount of any outstanding fines
- o any messages attached to the patron record

PATRON ACTIVITY does not display address, telephone number, etc. To display these fields, use PATRON STATUS.

10.1.2 PA Step By Step

To view the patron record the user must identify a specific patron in ILS. ILS will then display information from the patron record in the format below.

TITENS ID	CURRENTLY CHECKED OUT TITLE	AUTHOR	DUE DATE	RENEW
ITEMS - ^{ID}	ON RESERVE TITLE	AUTHOR	REQUESTED ON	NO NEED AFTER Page 69

Ч

- ---

TOTAL ITEMS CHECKED OUT: MESSAGE(S) RETURN TO CONTINUE: (ILS will again prompt for PATRON:)

For HELP with patron identification enter '1' and a RETURN.

'0.1.2.1 Identifying the Patron

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patron be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library card, or entering the equivalent bar code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTICNS

NAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, ILS will say (THERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or B to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the patron's name. For example, if you had a list like:

> 1 JONES, JOHM B. 2 JONES, JOHM D. 3 JONES, JOHM D. 4 JONES, JOHM F. 5 JONES, JOHM R.

and you wanted to display more information from the petron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter D2 or D3 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry. enter the index # which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRONS.

PATRON ID *- The Patron ID * is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the wand or type in the patron name whenever possible, thereby minimizing the chance of a typing error.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron ______list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before

Page 70

1.7

1

••

any transaction can be recorded into ILS local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for jathering patron information, putting it into the system at some later time. For a Suller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON RECISTRATION.

13.1.3 PA Special Features

.

τ

-

As of June 27. 1980 there are no special features for the PATRON ACTIVITY.

Page 71

. .

15.8

.

į.

11 PRINT BARCODE

...

11.1 INTRODUCTION

The PRINT BARCODE procedure permits authorized users to print barcodes for items or patrons. Patrons may lose their card, which has the barcode on it or the barcode on an item may have been removed or become unreadable. The user may use PRINT BARCODE to produce barcode labels for items which have records in the Master Bibliographic File (NBF) or patrons already registered in the system.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Print Barcode .
- 2. Step by Step Procedures For Print Barcode
- 3. Special Features for Print Barcode

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

11.1.1 PB Overview

The PRINT BARCODE procedure permits authorized users to print barcodes for items or patrons. Usually a barcode labal will be produced for an item during the NEWLY CATALOGED ITEM procedure and a labal will be produced for a patron during PATRON REGISTRATION. If a duplicate label is needed, PRINT BARCODE will produce it for items which have records in the Master Bibliographic File (NBF) or patrons already registered in the system.

PRINT BARCODE gives the user 3 alternatives:

- I Will print a defined item.
- P Will print a defined patron.
- E Will start batch printing.

For HELP on these choices enter 'F' and a RETURN.

11.1.2 PB Step By Step

The PRINT BARCODE option enables the user to:

 Print Barcode label for an Item (I) - Identify the item for which a Barcode Label is to be printed and store the data. This data say be stored for any length of time determined locally.

Page 72

1

٦,

- 2. Print Bartode Label for a Patron (P) Identify the patron for whom a Barcode Label is to be printed and store the fata. This data may be stored for any length of time determined locally.
- Batch Print Barcode Labels (B) Using the stored data, produce Barcode Labels on the printer. This can be done days or weeks after the data is entered using 1 or 2 above.

Each alternative has its own stap by stap procedure. For more HELP enter the number of the desired choice or FORWARD to SPECIAL FEATURES:

11.1.2.1 PB Identify Items

To print a Barcode Label for an item, the user must identify that item in the Master Bibliographic File (MBF). The user may select any of the 8 access options below (or the message option which allows the user to affix a short message to the item record). For example:

ILS will prompt: User enters:

ITEM:	TK=(title	٥f	the	item	(see	number	: 6	belo	4))	
OR										
ITEM:	CA=(call)	numb	er o	f the	ites	ı (see	nue	ber .	3 bel	ow)]

ILS will display the title chosen and the message, DATA IS STORED IN RUEUE. When the user asks ILS to print (alternative 3 of PRINT BARCODE), data stored in the queue will be printed on labels.

These are the options available for identifying an item in ILS:

1.	IID#×	Item Identification #	6.	ŤΚ	# Title Key
2.	70 =	Author	7.	AT	# Author/Title Key
3.	CA =	Call Humber	8.	SE	= Serles
а,	IS =	ISSN/ISBN	9.	MI	 Message (for item just entered)
5.	LC #=	Library of Congress #	r		

For mora HELP enter the number of the desired option.

11.1.2.2 Access by Item Identification Number

_Identifying items by their ITEM IDENTIFICATION NUMBER is one possible, yet uncommon way to access an item in the ILS system. The IID# is the alpha and numeric equivalent to the pattern of vertical black lines which make up the bar code and is found on the bar code label. It can be up to 10 characters long.

To access by the item identification number, enter the key "IID#" in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. TLS will then ask for the IID# and the user should

j

Page 73

1

166

L.

; ; enter the symbols as they appear on the item's bar code label. If a user chooses this option, it is essential that the characters be entered evactly as they appear. Any discregancies in the spacing of the characters or typos will yield a wrong match or no match. The user may combine these steps into one step by entering IID#=0 S# 1 90 4 in response to the prompt ITEM.

 SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM:
 ILS prompts ITEM:

 USER types IID\$
 OR
 USER replies IID\$=0

 ILS asks for the IID\$
 USER enters IID\$ value

11.1.2.3 Access by Author

..

Accessing an item by the AUTHOR is a popular access option. The ILS system will accept either a full author surname or a partial surname. This is done to afford the user the greatest amount of flexibility to view either an individual or range of entries:

SAMPLE: AU=ANDERSON ILS will display all entries with ANDERSON as author, without regard to which ANDERSON. The user may select the desired item by its item number. If there are more than 5 entries the user may scan through them by pressing F to FORWARD through the list or B to BACKUP.

ID TITLE AND AUTHOR 1 The Silver Skates by Anderson, Hans Christianson 2 The Biography of by Anderson, Sandy E.

DISPLAYING THE FULL ENTRY

If the user is unsure about an entry being the correct entry the D command (DISPLAY) can be invoked to display the full record of this item. to verify that it is the correct entry. The D command is particularly useful when the truncated title string gives either little or ambiguous information or is otherwise not fully meaningful to the user. If the correct record cannot be found using this access option, the user may select another search key or quit entirely.

11.1.2.4 Access by Call Number

Located in most instances on the spine or some other visible part of an item, the CALL NUMBER is perhaps the most efficient, and popular way of gaining access to the record of a specific item. Although various call numbering schemes are used by libraries all over the world. (Dewey, Library of Congress, and the National Library of Medicine's being the more renown schemes) they each require that a unique number be assigned to each piece in the collection. The call number can be as long as is the collection requires. Sometimes thin items have long call numbers and thick items have short ones.

- 1

Page 74

101

.

,

1

-

To access by call number the user must type in CA in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL CALL HUMBER. Then the user can enter the call number desired. If instead the user wisnes to combine these two steps the user may enter $GA=QATG^{-1}S$ in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. This may save some time. If the user wisnes to see a range of entries beginning with the same call number ILS will display 5 entries at a time on the screen. The user may press F to FORWARD or 3 to go BACKWARDS through the list.To see the full record of an item enter D and the item's ID number.

11.1.2.5 Access by ISSN or ISBN

.

The ISSN and ISBN are numeric conventions which have been established to standardize the identities of both serials and monographs respectively. They are heavily used in the acquisitions process by publishers and libraries alike as they afford a succinct means of specifying a desired item. The numbers are a code which identifies both the publisher and the specific item.

To access by either the ISSN or ISBN enter IS in response to the ILS prompt ITEN. ILS will respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL ISSN/ISBN. The user must then enter in the value. The user may instead combine these two steps into one by typing IS=0700223738 in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will retrie/e and then display on the screen all items which match. If the user wants a specific item, care must be exercised to enter the value exactly correct. If the user wishes to see a range of entries beginning with the same numbers then only a partial ISSN or ISBN need be entered.

SIMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS OR ILS says ENTER THE FULL... USER enters 0700223738 ILS prompts ITEM USER replies IS=0700223738

ILS will then search the ISSN/ISBN index to find all possible matches, and will display them on the screen. If there are more than 5 matches ILS will display the first 5 and say THERE'S MORE. The user may browse through the matches by typing F for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. If the correct entry is found the user must type the ID \sharp of the correct match. If the user wants to see the full record for any entry, enter D and that entry's ID

11.1.2.6 Access by LC Card Number

A LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NUMBER is assigned to each item cataloged by the Library of Congress. This number is used by libraries to order printed catalog cards from the library of Congress. The number is usually one of the cataloging elements included in publishers' Cataloging In Publication (CIP) data. It is typically composed of 2 characters followed by a hyphen and 3 to 6 additional numbers.

To access by the LC 0 the user must type in LC in response to the ILS prompt __ITEM. ILS will then respond with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL LC 0.user

Page 75

102

e,

ť

i

must then type in the LC 0. It is possible to combine these 2 steps into one by entering LC#79-123456 in response to the LLS prompt ITEM. ILS will then search the LC 0 index to find appropriate matches. (If the entire 2C 0 was entered there will be only one match; if a partial LC 0 was entered there may be several matches). The user may browse through the matches by pressing F to FORWARD and B to BACKUP. If the correct entry is found, enter the ID 0 for that entry. If the user is not sure that it is the correct record the full record may be called up by pressing D and the entry's LD 0.

SAMPLE: ILS prompts ITEM ILS prompts ITEM USER replies LC* OR USER enters LC*79-123456 ILS says ENTER THE FULL... USER enters 79-123456

11.1.2.7 Access by Title Key

Title access in the ILS system is almost the same as what is done in the OCLC system. Users may type in a truncated search key composed of the first few characters of the first few significant words in the title. Articles and other stop listed words (e.g. a, an, the, and, United States) are ignored. The key 3,2,2,1 is used to match the first 3 characters of the first word, the first 2 characters of the second word, the first 2 characters of the third word, and the first character of the fourth word in the title.

To access by title key, the user must enter TK in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS used as the EKTER THE THE TILE KEY IN FORMAT 3.2.2.1. (NOTE: if a title has fewer than 4 words enter compactously to fill in the key.) Thase 2 steps may be combined by typing (e.g.) TK=DOR,EL,ME,D. ILS used to the search key. If there are more than 5 metches the system will ray THERE'S MORE and the user may browse through the entries by typing 7 for FORWARD or B for BACKWARDS. To be sure that you have the correct record type D and the entry's ID 0.

11.1.2.8 Access by Author Title Key

The AUTHOR/TITLE key is a combination key used to sort out more quickly a desired record. Although the same words may be found in the titles of different works, it is likely that different authors may be associated with each title. In this case a 4,4 combination key of both author and title would yield a more precise retrieval than a 3,2,2,1 title kay.

To access by author/title key the user must enter AT in response to the ILS prompt ITEM. ILS will respond with ENTER IST 4 CHARS OF AUTHOR'S LAST NAME 6 IST 4 CHARS OF TITLE IM FORMAT 4,4. The user must then enter the characters as prescribed. It is possible to combine these 2 steps by typing (e.g.) AT=ALLR.BODY for the entry Body Functions by Jon Allred. ILS will respond by searching for all author title combinations with these characters and display them in groups of 5 on the screen. If there are wore than 5 entries ILS will say THERE'S MORE and the user can press RETURN to view them. To scan through the list press F for FORWARD and a for BACKWARD. To be sure that an entry is

P

Page 76

1

103

for the correct record the user may press D for DISPLAY and the ID number of the entry to see the full record of the entry.

11.1.2.9 Access by Series

Under the ILS system it is possible to access records in the Master Bibliographic File by the SERIES heading. Catalogers and other library staff may find this access point particularly convenient if they have series which comprise many issues. These are most notable in the biomedical and physical sciences and in special libraries that contain the reports of their agency or corporation.

To access ILS via the series option the user must enter SE in response to the promt ITEM. (NOTE: This item option should not be confused with the /SE command for serials check in which is another feature of the circulation subsystem and uses the SZ command. Remember that the serials check in command requires a σSE to get out to that transaction activity, whereas accessing a record by series heading requires only SE in response to the ILS prompt ITEM.) ILS will reply with ENTER THE FULL OR PARTIAL SERIES. The user may then enter any or all words of the series heading that are known and ILS will search the series index to find a match. ILS will display all matches and if there are more than 5, the user may view them by entering F for FORWARD or B for BACKUP.

11.1.2.10 Messaga (Item Just Entered)

Immediately after a user has identified an itru in the Circulation Subsystem, ILS allows for a short massage to be entaged.

(1.1.2.1) PB Identify Patron

If the user enters (P)ATRON in response to CHOICE>

ILS will display: User enters:

(B)ATCH OR (S)INGLE PATRON? S/ 'S' or RETURN - ILS will prompt for PATRON: The user must then use the PATRON IDEXTIFICATION options discussed below.

OR

. '

-	'S' - ILS will print a list of names from the print quaue in riphabetical sider. The user may specify the first and final names on the list. ILS will print all names which fall between those names. If 'S' is chosen ILS will follow the sequence on the new screen.
ILS will display:	Usei enters:
PRINT PATRON LABEL FROM NAME:	The first name to be printed, for example - Blair. Page 77

Н

THROUGH NAME:

...

The final name to be printed, for example - Conn.

(U)HPRINTED NAMES ONLY OR (A)LL NAMES:

- 'U' Prints only the labels which have never been printed before in the alphabetic sequence from Blair to Cohn.
- 'A' Prints all labels in the alphabetic sequence from Blair to Cohn.

For more HELP with PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS press RETURN.

To produce a Barcode Label a patron must be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified with one of the three options discussed below.

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS

MAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, ILS will say (THERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or B to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the patron's name. for example, if you had a list like:

1	JOKES,	JOHN	8.
2	JOKES,	JOHN	D.
3	JONES.	JOHN	D.
4	JONES,	JOHN	1.
5	JOKES.	JOHN	R.

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter D2 or D3 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry, enter the # which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRON:.

PATRON ID $\phi \sim$ The Patron ID ϕ is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff type in the patron NAME whenever possible, thereby minimizing the chance of an error.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before any transaction can be recorded into ILS. Local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information and putting it into the system at a later time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the __path PATRON REGISTRATION.

Page 78

10.3

Н

11.1.2.12 PB Satch Print

••

The Batch Print choice of PRINT BARCODE allows the user to print Barcode Labels using data stored in the print queue. Printing may be done fays or even weeks after it was stored. The data stored in the queue will remain there until removed by the local system administrator.

3atch Print has 3 options:

- L WILL PRINT ALL UNPRINTED LABELS This option will cause the printer to produce barcodes from data stored in the print queue. The printer will only produce labels which HAVE NOT been printed before.
- P WILL PRINT ALL PRINTED LABELS This option will cause the printer to produce barcodes from data stored in the print queue. The printer will only produce labels which HAVE been printed before.
- A WILL PRINT ALL ENTRIES This option will cause the barcode printer to produce labels from all data stored in the print queue whether or not it has been printed before.

Now press 'T' to go back to STEP BY STEP PRGCEDURES for PRINT BARCOLE or press 'F' and a RETURN twice to get to SPECIAL FEATURES.

11.1.3 PB Special Features

1. The print queue is a very important concept for an understanding of the PRINT BARCODE procedure. ANY INFORMATION entered using the Patron or Item alternatives will be stored in the print queue WHETHER OR NOT it is printed. When the user enters an item or patron in response to an ILS prompt for ITEM: or PATRON: the label information will be stored in the print queue. The label may be printed immediately but the information will remain in the print queue until removed by the local system administrator.

In addition, each piece of label information in the print queue will be marked to indicate whether or not a label has been printed. It is this feature which allows the user to 'print all unprinted labels', 'print all printed _labels' or 'print all entries' when using the SATCH PRINT alternative.

2. The Bercode Label printer must be turned ON before the user begins to print labels from the data stored in the queue. If it is OFF, ILS will prompt the user to CNECK PRINTER POWER, but there is a chance that data could be lost if the user attempts to produce labels with the printer OFF

Page 79

.

1

••

12 PATRON DELETE

12.1 INTRODUCTION

The PATRON DELETE procedure permits authorized users remove patrons from the patron list.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Patron Delete

2. Step by Step Procedures For Patron Delete

3. Special Features for Patron Delete

Please enter the number of the type of information you desire:

12.1.1 PD Overview

The PATRON DELETE procedure permits authorized users to remove patrons from the patron list. When the user has positively identified and deleted a patron, the patron's name is removed from every part of the ILS system.

For Step by Step Procedures press 'F' and RETURN. For Special Features of PATRON DELETE press 'F' and RETURN twice.

12.1.2 PD Step By Step

PATRON DELETE consists of the following steps:

1. IDENTIFY THE PATRON Search ILS for this patron's record.

 DELETE THE PATRON Remove this patron from the patron list.

For more HELP concerning either of these steps enter the number of that step and press RETURN.

هي يه به

Ξ.

-

Page 80

For information on SPECIAL FEATURES of PATRON DELETE press 'F' and RETURN.

12.1.2.1 Identifying the Patron

.

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patrom be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library card, or entering the equivalent bar code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PATRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS

NAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, ILS will say (TMERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or B to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the petron's name. For example, if you had a list like:

1	JONES,	JOHN	Β.
2	JONES,	JOHN	Э.
3	JONES,	JOHN	D.
4	JONES,	JOHN	Ε.
5	JONES.	JOHX	R.

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter D2 or D3 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry, enter the index # which appears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRON:.

PATRON ID *- The Patron ID * is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the wand or type in the patron name whenever possible, theraby minimizing the chance of a typing error.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before _any transaction can be recorded into ILS. Local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information, putting it into the system at some later time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON REGISTRATION.

1

and the second second second

Page 81

:

1

1.8
12.1.2.2 PD Delete Patzon

••

When the prtron has	been identified, ILS will display the	patron's name. Then,		
ILS will prompt:	User enters:			
OK TO DELETE? NOV	RETURN to cancel this tra	RETURN to cancel this transaction		
	OR			
	'Y' to remove all record the ILS system.	of the patron from		
PATRON IS DELETED To continue, hit sre	TURN> RETURN			
PATRON :	The user may now repeat (delete another patron or return to the CIRCULATIO)	the process and enter '/' to K SUBSYSTEM.		
12.1.3 PD Special	Features			
 If the user attem display the follo *** NOT DELETED *** 	pts to delete a patron who has items o wing message:	shecked out, ILS will		
PATRON HAS THE FOLLG Please check in thes	WING ITEM(S): E ITEM(S) BEFORE DELETING PATRON			
ID TITLE	AUTHOR	DUE DATE		
The items checked ou 2. When the user del entire ILS system and routing lists	t to that patron will then be listed. etes a patron, that patron's name is : . The patron will automatically be rep	removed from the		

=

.

france:

.

Page 82

. .

-

13 PRINT TEMPORARY LABEL

13.1 INTRODUCTION

PRINT TEMPORARY LABELS permits authorized isons to produce temporary function Labels using the barcode printer

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Print Temporary Labels

2. Step by Step Procedures For Print Temporary labels

3. Special Features for Print Temporary Labels

Please enter the number of the type of information you desize:

13.1.1 PT Overview

PRINT TEMPORARY LIBELS permits authorized users to produce temporary Baroode Labels using the caroode printet. Lemporary Labels would normally be used when a library is first converting its records to machine readable form or if the library wished to circulate an item before it was processed. A temporary Label might also be used on a book obtained through Interlibrary Loan.

A temporary label is a barcode label that contains only an identification number. The barcode printer will produce two copies of each label, one for the book and one for the book card.

Press 'F' and a RETURM to get to Step By Step procedures for PRINT TEMPORARY LABELS.

13.1.2 PT Step By Step

_PRINT TEMPORARY LABEL should follow these steps:

215 Will	prompt:	User enters:
THE LAST	TEMPORARY ITEM BARGODE # IS: 325	TIS will list the number of the last temporary label produced

-

Page 33

1

ENTER STARTING LABEL NUMBER: 326/

HOW MANY LABELS

..

٦

11

... PRINTING

Press RETURN if this number is correct.

Intel the humber of labels you want.

The requested labels will be produced.

13.1.3 PT Special Features

As of June 27, 1980 the are no Special Features for PRINT TEMPORARY LABELS.

Page Ru

с. н. **ц**ант

171

14 PATRON REGISTRATION

14.1 INTRODUCTION

.

PATRON REGISTRATION permits authorized users to add names to the list of registered borrowers or to edit information in the pat on record (address, telephone number, etc).

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

- 1. Overview of Patron Registration.
- 2. Step By Step procedures.
- Special Features.

Enter the number of the type of information you want.

14.1.1 PR Overview

PATRON REGISTRATION permits authorized users to add names to the list of registered botrowers of to edit information in the patron record (address, telephone number, etc).

Registration - IIS will display a patron registration form on the screen. As the user enters information the cursor will move down the screen to the next prompt. Optional fields may be skapped by pressing RETURN.

Editing - Existing patron records can be edited by entering the patron's name in response to NAME:. When the patron has been identified YLS will display the original registration form (with the blanks filled in) and the user may now edit the record.

Press 'F' and RETURN to get to Step By Step procedures for PATRON REGISTRATION.

14.1.2 PR Step By Step

PATRON REGISTRATION permits the user to 200 to at 2011 the patron record. The screen acts as a registration form which the user can till in-

To ADD a new patron:

ILS may prompt:	User can enter
HAME	Patron's have in proper format (last name.first name)
-	Page 85

11

172

••• · · ·

- - - - ----

Faculty, Student, Hilitary, County resident, Institution or any other type of borrower allowed in the library. Information entered here detarmines which prompts will TYPE: appear below. TITLE: Mr. Mrs. Ms. Miss. Dr. etc. If 'Institution' was entered in response to TYPE: a prompt such as 'Contact Person' might be displayed instead of TITLE. ILS may prompt: User can enter: DEPT: This prompt might only appear if 'Staff' or 'Faculty' was entered in response to TYPE. STREET: CITY If this information changes the user may edit it. STATE: / (see EDITing below) 7.1 P : ILS will automatically supply the date. The user may override it by entering another date. EXPIRATION DATE:

NOTE: If the user enters a name which is already in the patron file ILS will display the matching name(s). To register a new patron with the same name press RETURN and follow the process above. To EDIT, see below.

To EDIT the Patron Record:

Enter the name of the patron. A list of names which match the entered name will be displayed. The user enters the index 4 of the correct patron and the patron's original registration will be displayed. The cursor will appear at the top of the form. If the data is to be left unchanged the user should press RETURN and the cursor will move to the next prompt. If the data is to be changed the user should enter the new data and a RETURN. The new data will replace the old in the patron record.

Press 'F' and RETURN to get to Special Features.

14.1.3 PR Special Features

1) Some information asked for on the registration form may be optional. For example there may be a space for HOHE PHONE 4 and WORK PHONE 4. A patron may not have a work phone number. The user may press REYURN and the cursor will move to the next item. Some information may be required in all cases. If the user pressed RETURN in response to TYPE: ILS would respond REQUIRED FIELD-PLEASE ENTER. In this case the user MUST enter a response.

2) While entering information the user can press a '-' to move the cursor up the screen. This allows the user to go back and correct mistakes made on the registration form. The user can move down by pressing RETURN as many times as necessary.

_3) If any of the prompts on the registration form are unclear the user may

Page 36

1

...

173

iÌ

enter a '?' and a RETURM. ILS will respond with the options available.

The next screen contains information for the System Administrator.

7

1

Special Feature of PATRON REGISTRATION for the System Administrators

The prompts for PATRON REGISTRATION (and the structure of yout patron file) depend on your local software. The Help Text for PATRON REGISTRATION is written to cover various possibilities. You will probably wish to edit the Help Text for PATRON REGISTRATION to conform accurately to your specifications. The Step By Step paragraph should list each prompt exactly as it will appear on the screen. You may wish to indicate which fields are required and which are not. You can include the correct format for various prompts.

Page 87

174

:

£

15 PATRON STATUS

••

15.1 INTRODUCTION

PATRON STATUS permits authorized users to view the complete patron record as it was created during PATRON REGISTRATION and information on PATRON ACTIVITY. The information displayed varies with the type of patron.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

1. Overview of Patron Status

2. Step by Step Procedures For Patron Status

3. Special Features for Patron Status

Enter the number of the type of information you desire:

15.1.1 PS Overview

PATRON STATUS permits authorized users to view information in the patron record and information displayed by PATRON ACTIVITY. This data can consist of name, address, and status of the patron. It will also list items currently checked out or on reserve and any messages associated with the patron.

For Step By Step procedures of PATRON STATUS press 'F' and RETURN.

15.1.2 PS Step By Step

To view PATRON STATUS the user must identify a specific patron in ILS. Information entered during PATRON REGISTRATION and current PATRON ACTIVITY will be displayed in the format below.

 THR. JOHN A SMITH *STAFF*
 EXPIRATION DATE: 03/19/82

 ORGANIZATION: OSD
 OFFICE SYMBOL: XY2W
 ROOM\$: 1234

 PHONE: 555-1234
 NAILSTOP: HERE

 ADDRESS: 123 MAIN STREET
 SMALLTOWN VA 22302 HOME PHONE: 123-4567

Page 88

175

11

ITENS CURRENTLY CHECKED OUT ID TITLE AUTHOR DUE DATE RENEW (All items currently checked out will be listed.)

ITEMS ON RE ERVE ID TITLE AUTHOR REQUESTED ON NO NEED AFTER (All items on reserve will be listed.)

TOTAL ITEMS CHECKED OUT: MESSAGE(S) RETURN TO CONTINUE: (ILS will again prompt for PATRON:)

For HELP with Patron Identification press '1' and a RETURN.

15.1.2.1 Identifying the Patron

.

Any and all ILS functions involving patron data require that the patron be accurately identified in the ILS. A patron may be identified by either wanding the bar code on their library card, or entering the equivalent bar code number or the patron's last name. (If the wand is not used, enter the patron's last name instead of the barcode number to avoid typing mistakes).

PFTRON IDENTIFICATION OPTIONS

NAME-This is the most common way to enter the patron data. Enter the full last name or enough characters of the last name to narrow the list down sufficiently to display the desired patron entry. If there are more than 5 matches, ILS will say (THERE'S MORE) and the user may then press F or B to view additional entries that match. If the 5th entry seems to be the correct one, press F to be sure that the 6th or 7th ones are not identical names. To see more information for a patron in the list, enter D followed by the index number beside the patron's name. For example, if you had a list like:

1	JONES,	JOHN	В.
2	JONES,	JOHN	D.
3	JOKES,	JOHN	D.
4	JONES,	JOHN	Γ.
5	JOKES,	JOHN	R.

and you wanted to display more information from the patron's record to select the correct entry, you could enter D2 or D3 to view further information from the patron record to accurately identify the patron from the list.

. Once you're sure that you've found the correct entry, enter the index I which gayyears in the first column in response to the prompt PATRON:

Page 39

PATRON ID 9- The Patron ID 9 is equivalent to the bar code configuration which appears on each patron's library card. It is made up of numbers and other characters which are transformed into a pattern of thick and thin lines and spaces which together make a code to identify both items and patrons. A patron may be identified by this code, however, it is suggested that the staff use the wand or type in the patron name whenever possible, thereby minimizing the chance of a typing error.

PATRON REGISTRATION - If the patron is not already registered in the patron list, it will be necessary to enter their patron data into the system before any transaction can be recorded into ILS. Local ILS sites may devise their own procedures for gathering patron information, putting it into the system at some later time. For a fuller discussion of patron registration refer to the path PATRON REGISTRATION.

15.1.3 PS Special Features

As of June 16, 1980 there are no known special features for the Patron Activity function.

NOTE to the SYSTEM ADMINISTRATOR: Format of the PATRON STATUS display will vary from site to site. You may wish to alter the text of the PS - STEP BY STEP paragraph to reflect your own displays.



; ;

> 1 7

 $(\cdot \cdot$

í.

Page 70

, = =

1

-

16 TIME & DATE

- •

-

П

16.1 INTRODUCTION

THE TIME & DATE option tells the user the correct time and current date as it is known within the ILS computer. The computer has a "clock and a calendar" built into its internal working parts, and it can supply users with the correct time and date very easily.

To find out either the correct time or date, the user must enter TD or /TD (the / is only necessary if you are in the middle of some other function) ILS will respond by displaying the current date and time. The display will remain on the screen for several seconds; then ILS will take the user back to the last transaction before going to TIME & DATE.

